CONFIDENTIAL

WAR DIARY

--------ooo--------

-:- OF -:-

Hqrs. CANADIAN BATTALION 3rd CANADIAN DIVISION

FROM June 1st TO June 30th 18.

--------ooo--------

VOLUME 33

With appendix "A"

WAR DIARY

42nd Canadian Bn. 3rd Cdn. Division,

from 1st to 30th June, 1918.

Volume 30.

Diary Text — 5 Pages.

Appendix A.

O.O. 189 dated the 2nd June, Instructions for move of 42nd Battalion to BONY on the 3rd.

O.O. 191 dated the 12th June, Instructions reference attack scheme in co-operation with 7th Tank Bn. on the 13th.

O.O. 192 dated the 25th June, Instructions for the move of 42nd Battalion by Train 4 from AIRE on the night 25th and 26th.

O.O. 193 dated the 26th June, 7th C.I.B. to be relieved by 6th C.I.B. on the 28th and 29th June. Instructions for march of 42nd Bn. to BELLACOURT on the 27th June.

O.O. 194 dated the 27th June, Instructions for relief of 27th Bn. by 42nd Bn. on night 28th/29th June.

'A'

ORIGINAL

CONFIDENTIAL

WAR DIARY

JUNE 1918

42nd CANADIAN BATTALION

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY
or
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(*Erase heading not required.*)

Army Form C. 2118.

33

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
1918 JUNE	1		The month began with the battalion still in rest billets at ST. HILAIRE. The Brigade Rifle Meet on Auchy au Bois ranges was held, lasting all morning and part of the afternoon. Each battalion had 15 entries in the individual matches and 10 in the aggregate. In the individual matches the battalion had prizewinners placed as follows:- Competition I 5th place, Competition II. 2nd, 3rd and 5th places, Competition III. 2nd place and 3 firers in 4th place, Competition IV. 1st and 3rd places and 4 firers in 8th place. In the aggregate the battalion team got 2nd place, P.P. C.L.I. team being first and R.C.R, 49th and Brigade Headquarters, 3rd, 4th and 5th respectively.	
			In the officers team match the battalion got 3rd place, P.P. C.L.I. and 49th being 1st and 2nd, R.C.R. and Brigade Headquarters being 4th and 5th respectively.	
	2		The Brigade Sniping Competition was held at the 1st Army S.O.S. School Ranges, LINGHEM. The battalion sniping section did excellent work and won the aggregate with 8 points, 49th 2nd 7 points, R.C.R. 3rd 6½ points P.P. C.L.I. 4th 1½ points.	
	3		The battalion took part in 3rd Canadian Divisional Tactical Scheme in DOMY area. Embussing at 7.30 a.m. the battalion debussed near BASSE BOULOGNE. Many valuable lessons were learnt as a result of the manoeuvres. The battalion returned by bus at the end of the day.	
	4		Lieut. H. A. Sewell was sent to hospital, suffering from a wrenched knee, which he had received while playing baseball.	
	5		Lieut. C.L. Ogilvie, who had been acting as Orderly Officer to C.O. C. 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade in the absence of Lieut. Meikle, returned to the battalion.	
	6		Announcement was made in Divisional Routine Orders of the award among the Birthday Honors, of the Military Cross to Capt. (A/Major) C.B. Topp, commanding "B" Company of the battalion. All Officers and other ranks were greatly pleased at this award, which the recipient had earned by his gallantry and devotion to duty, since he joined the battalion in March 1916, as a Lieutenant.	

A5834 Wt. W4973/M687 750,000 8/16 D. D. & L. Ltd. Forms/C.2118/13.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY
or
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(*Erase heading not required.*)

Army Form C. 2118.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
1918 JUNE	8		Lieut. J. A.P. Haydon, who had been attached to the battalion, was taken on strength. The announcement appeared in Orders, of the award among the Birthday Honors of the Distinguished Conduct Medal to 479055 R.S.M. James Page, the Battalion Sergeant Major, who had earned this decoration by his devotion to duty at all stages of his connection with the battalion. He came to France with the battalion as a private and earned his promotion step by step to his present rank.	
	9		A Brigade Church Parade was held, followed by a presentation of medal ribbons by the G.O.C. 3rd Canadian Division, to other ranks of the Brigade who had not had them presented previously. 24 other ranks of the battalion received ribbons on this occasion, 2 receiving 2 ribbons, the distribution being 2 D.C.Ms. 1 Belgian Croix de Guerre and 23 M.Ms. On this date also, Field Practices were carried out by 2 Companies at the AUCHY AU BOIS ranges.	
	10		The battalion took part in a 3rd Canadian Divisional Tactical Scheme in the BOMY area, embussing at 8.30 a.m. and debussing near BONCOURT. After the manoeuvres the battalion returned by bus to ST. HILAIRE.	
	11		Lieut. G.R. Marani reported to the battalion, was taken on strength and posted to "B" Company.	
	12		Lieut. H.M. Scott M.C. proceeded on English Leave.	
	12/13		The battalion carried out a practice night operation scheme in the LINGHEM area. "A" Company acted as enemy outpost line, "B" Company as outpost line and C and D attacked through the latter. The lesson learnt from this scheme was the value of rapid progress with a definite plan, as owing to lack of both these features the operations were drawn out many hours after they should have been concluded, and the enemy outpost line was not taken.	
	13		The battalion practised an attack with Tanks of the 7th Tank battalion, near ENGUINEGATTES. Two companies practised the attack at a time. Many useful lessons were learnt, and the men enjoyed riding back to the jumping off line on the Tanks. The battalion moved to and from ENGUINEGATTES on busses.	

A5834 Wt. W4973/M687 750,000 8/16 D. D. & L. Ltd. Forms/C.2118/13.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY
or
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(Erase heading not required.)

Army Form C. 2118.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
1918 JUNE	13		The Commanding Officer proceeded on special leave to England. Lieut. A.O. Budd reported to the battalion and was posted to "D" Company.	
	14		Capt. A.C. Law the battalion Paymaster, left the battalion to proceed to England, as under the new arrangement made by the Paymaster General, the appointment of battalion paymaster had been abolished and two Brigade paymasters substituted. Much regret was felt by all at Capt. Law's departure, as he had been a general favourite and an excellent paymaster.	
	17		The battalion took part in a 3rd Divisional Tactical Scheme in the BOMY area. This scheme was particularly interesting by reason of the use of tanks and observations balloons by the enemy and contact planes by both sides, and also by the fact that the advance was much more rapid than in any of the previous manoeuvres, and a great extent of ground was covered by the Division which advanced from SERNY to HILL 179, a distance of 5 miles as the crow flies. The battalion, operating on the left flank of the Division, was able to turn the enemy's right flank on HILL 179 (the final objective) by a clever manoeuvre carried out by 3 platoons of "A" Company and 1 of "B" Company, under Lieut. H.B. Trout.	
	19		The battalion carried out night operations in the LINGHEM area, on the same lines as those carried out on the night of the 12/13th June. The lessons of the previous night operations had been well learnt. The attack was carried out with dash and on a well organised plan, and the enemy's line captured.	
	20		The results of the Dumbell Competition were announced. The award for the best platoon in the battalion was made to Lieut. MACASKILL'S platoon, No. 5 of "B" Company. The award for the 4 best shots in the battalion was made to 132794 Pte. HOUNSELL R.A. "C" Co. 103805 Pte. ROBERTS S. "D" Co. 136045 Sgt. HAMMOND E.A. "B" Co. and 408169 Pte MORRIS T. Scout Section.	
	21		Field Practices, Range Practices, Preliminary Musketry, Judging Distance, Lewis Gun Practices and Lewis Gun Drill were carried on all day from 7 a.m. to 7 p.m. on AUCHY AU BOIS ranges, by all companies.	

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY
or
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

Army Form C. 2118

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
1918 JUNE	22		The announcement appeared in orders of the award of the Meritorious Service Medal to 418809 Cpl. (A/Sgt) W.C. Gallow and 127628 L/Cpl. (A/Cpl) G.E. Black. A/Sgt. Gallow had been Lewis Gun Sergeant with the battalion until invalided to England in the fall of 1917. He had done excellent service in that capacity and also as a platoon N.C.O. A/Cpl. Black had done excellent service with the battalion as a runner, and had twice been recommended for decoration for his work in that capacity, particularly in the attack on Vimy Ridge. Later as Orderly Room Corporal he had shown devotion to duty, both in and out of the line. GSH	
	23		The 3rd Canadian Divisional Sports were held at Linghem, lasting all day, and were a great success. The battalions main entry was the Association Football Team, which played in the Divisional Finals, but was unfortunately beaten in overtime play by the 3rd Canadian Machine Gun Battalion, Score 1-0. GSH	
	24		At about 2 a.m. advice was received from Brigade that the 3rd Canadian Division would relieve the 2nd Canadian Division in the line just south of Arras on the night 25/26th, that advance parties would move off by bus at 7 a.m. 24th, and that the battalion would be prepared to move at any time on the 24th. The advance party left as arranged and everything was prepared for a move. GSH	
	25		The Transport left by road, marching to ST.MICHEL EN TERNOISE near ST. POL, where it staged. The battalion less transport moved by Route March leaving ST.HILAIRE at 6 p.m. arriving at AIRE at 8 p.m. and entraining at 9 p.m. Lewis Guns and magazines were carried in the train. GSH	
	25/26		The battalion moved by train from AIRE to AUBIGNY where it detrained at 2.30 a.m. on June 26th. The battalion then marched to LATTRE ST. QUENTIN where it went into billets. GSH	
	27		The battalion left LATTRE ST. QUENTIN at 8 a.m. and marched by road to BELLACOURT, which it reached about 11 a.m., the transport leaving the column en route and proceeding to MONCHIET. The battalion took over the billets of the 19th Canadian battalion at BELLACOURT and the lines of the same battalion at MONCHIET. GSH	

2449 Wt. W14957/M90 750,000 1/16 J.B.C. & A. Forms/C.2118/12.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY
or
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

Army Form C. 2118.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
1918 JUNE	28		Lieut. H.B. Trout was sent to hospital, sick.	
	28/29.		On the night of the 28/29th, the battalion relieved the 27th Canadian battalion in Support, in the NEUVILLE VITASSE sector. The relief was completed without casualties. On our right the 5th Canadian Infantry Brigade, left the 49th Canadian Battalion E.R, right front line the R.C.R. left front line the P.P.C.L.I. The Brigade was on the extreme left flank of the 3rd Army. A battalion Details camp was organized at BEAUMETZ under Brigade authority, at which were left 3 officers and 100 other ranks. Of the latter, approximately 60 were sick who were suffering from the epidemic of influenza, which had been prevalent throughout the country and in England for a fortnight. This malady although widespread, was fortunately of short duration.	
	30		The month ended with the battalion still in the line in Support.	

Lieut. Col.
Comdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.

2449 Wt. W14957/M90 750,000 1/16 J.B.C. & A. Forms/C.2118/12.

SECRET. 2/ "A" 1

OPERATION ORDER NO. 189
by
Lieut. Col. B. McLennan, D.S.O.
Cmndg., 42nd Canadian Battn. R.H.C.

Ref. map HAZEBROUCK 5a. 1/100,000 SUNDAY JUNE 2ND 18.

1. **INFORMATION.** The 7th Cdn. Inf. Bde., will take part in 3rd Cdn. Divisional Tactical Scheme in the BOMY Area to-morrow 3rd inst.

2. **INTENTION.** The 42nd Cdn. Battalion R.H.C. will move by 'bus from ST. HILAIRE to the BOMY Area to-morrow morning 3rd June.

The Battalion will debus at Cross Roads immediately south of first E in BASSE-BOULOGNE.

3. **EMBUSSING POINT & TIME.** The Battalion will fall in on the AUCHY au BOIS-ST. HILAIRE Road with head of column 100 yards S.W. of "A" Coys parade ground at 7.20 a.m.

4. **ORDER OF EMBUSSING** Will be as follows:-

Headquarters Details.
A. B. C. D. COYS.

5. Lieut. C. G. Howard will act as embussing Officer and Lieut. A. Fleming as debussing Officer.

6. **S.A.A.** No live S.A.A. will be carried. Pouches will be carefully inspected and Unit Commanders will be responsible that all live S.A.A. has been removed. The Q.M. will arrange that each of the 'busses carry 2 unbroken boxes of S.A.A. for emergency purposes. This S.A.A. will be returned to the stores on the return to billets.

7. **LEWIS GUNS.** Lewis Guns will be carried. Loaded magazines will be left in 'busses during manoeuvres.

8. **RATIONS.** Haversack rations will be carried and sufficient time will be available to make Tea on completion of manoeuvres before the Battalion returns to billets.

9. **TRANSPORT.** Transport will not move. Officers Horses will be sent out to the debussing point under arrangements to be made by T.O. to be there by 8.30 a.m.

10. **DRESS.** Battle Order without steel helmets.

11. **MARCHING OUT STATE.** Marching Out states will be handed into Orderly Room by 6.45 am to-morrow morning.

12. **CONFERENCE** There will be a conference on the ground at the completion of the Operation on the place at which Officers Call is sounded. All mounted Officers will attend.

J. D. MACLEOD
CAPTN. ADJUTANT.

Copies to:-

Hq. 7th C.I. Bde.	O. C. A. B. C. D. COYS
C.O.	T.O.
2 i/c.	Q.M.
Adjt.	B.S.M.
I.O.	FILE.
B.O.	WAR DIARY (3).
L.G.O.	
S.O	

2/7

SECRET

OPERATIONS ORDER No. 100

by

Lieut. Col. B. McLennan, D.S.O.

Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Bn. R.H.C.

Map
Schedule 5-a
1/100,000

1. INTERPRETATION — The 7th Cdn. Inf. Bde. will take part in 3rd. Cdn. Divisional tactical scheme in the Bomy Area tomorrow 10th inst.

2. INTENTION — The 42nd Cdn. Bn. R.H.C. will move by bus from St Hilaire to the Bomy Area and will return to billets on completion of manoeuvres.

3. DEBUSSING POINT & TIME — The Battalion will fall in on the AUCHY AU BOIS St Hilaire Road with head of column 100 yards S.W. of A. Coy's Parade Ground at 8.20 am.

4. DEBUSSING POINT — The Battalion will debus at Cross Roads just west of the B in Bonnourt and will then rendezvous on the southern edge of the big wood just west of Orlen. Lieut. C.G. Howard will act as embussing officer Lieut. A.H. Ewing will act as debussing officer.

5. S.A.A. — No live SAA will be carried. Pouches will be carefully inspected and Unit Commanders will be responsible that all live SAA has been removed. The Q.M. will arrange that each of the busses carry 2 unbroken boxes of SAA for emergency purposes. This SAA will be returned to the stores on return to billets.

6. LEWIS GUNS — Lewis Guns will be carried. Loaded magazines will be left in busses during manoeuvres.

7. RATIONS — Haversack rations will be carried and sufficient time will be available to make tea on completion of manoeuvres before the Bn. returns to billets.

Cooks will go with their Coys. and bring dixies. They will remain with busses.

8. TRANSPORT — Transport will not move. Officers horses will be sent to the debussing point under arrangements to be made by the T.O. to be there by 9.30 am.

9. DRESS — Battle order with steel helmets.

10. MARCHING OUT STATES — Marching out states will be handed in to the Orderly room by 7.45 am. tomorrow morning.

11. CONFERENCE — At the conclusion of the operations a conference will be held on the ground where the officers call is first sounded. All mounted officers will attend.

J. D. McLEOD,
Capt. Adjutant.

Copies to HQ 7th CIB. C.O. 2 I/c Adjt.
O.C. A.B.C.D Coys. I.O. R.O. L.G.O. S.O.
M.O. Q.M. B.S.M. War Diary (3)

SECRET

OPERATION ORDER NO.191 COPY NO. 15

by

Map Ref/ Lieut.Col. D. McLennan, D.S.O.

Hazebrouck 5A. Cmdg. 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.

1/100,000 WEDNESDAY, JUNE 12TH, 1918

1

INFORMATION — The 42nd. Cdn. Bn. R.H.C. will carry out an Attack Scheme in co-operation with the 7th Tank Battalion, near ENGUINEGATTE to-morrow, 13th instant.

2

INTENTION — The 42nd.Cdn.Bn.R.H.C. will move by Buss from ST.HILAIRE to the cross roads immediately East of the third "E" in ENGUINEGATTE, and will return to billets on completion of manoeuvres.

3.

EMBUSSING POINT & TIME — The Battalion will fall in on the AUCHY-AU-BOIS - ST.HILAIRE Road, with head of column 100 yards South-West of A Company's Parade Ground, at 8.20 am.

Lieut. A. B. Proven will act as Embussing Officer.

4.

DEBUSSING POINT — The Battalion will debuss at cross roads immediately East of the third "E" in ENGUINEGATTE.

Lieut. A. Fleming will act as Debussing Officer.

5.

S.A.A. — No live S.A.A. will be carried. Pouches will be carefully inspected and Unit Commanders will be responsible that all live S.A.A. has been removed. Q.M. will arrange that bus carries two unbroken boxes of SAA which will be returned to stores on return to billets.

6.

LEWIS GUNS — Lewis Guns will be carried. Loaded magazines will be left in busses during manoeuvres.

7.

RATIONS & DIXIES will not be carried.

8.

TRANSPORT will not move.

9.

DRESS — Battle Order with Steel Helmets.

10.

MARCHING OUT STATE — Marching Out States will be handed in to Orderly Room by 7.45 am. to-morrow.

11.

EMBUSSING POINT FOR RETURN — On the completion of the manoeuvres the Battalion will embuss at cross roads immediately East of the third "E" in ENGUINEGATTE.

Lieut. A. B. Proven will act as Embussing Officer.

J. D. MACLEOD,

Captain/Adjutant

COPY NO. 1 to H.Q. 7thC.I.Bde.
2 C.O.
3 2 i/c
4.5.6.7. to O.Cs. A.B.C.D.Coys.
8. I.O.
9. B.O.
10. L.G. O.
11. to S.O.
12. T.O.
13 Q.M.
14 BSM.
15.16.17 War Diary
18 File.
19 Adjutant

ZV

SECRET
REFC.MAP
HAZEBROOK.5.a.
1/100.000

OPERATION ORDER 191
BY
MAJOR R.L.H.EWING D.S.O. M.C.
CMDG 43nd.CANADIAN BATTALION.R.H.C.

SUNDAY JUNE 16th.

1. INFORMATION The 7th.Can.Inf.Brigade will take part in 3rd.Canadian Divisional tactical scheme (No.7.) in the BONY Area tomorrow 17th.inst.

2. INTENTION The 43nd.Can.Bn.will move by bus from St HILAIRE to SERNY and will return to Billets on completion of manouvres.

3. EMBUSSING POINT & TIME The Battalion will fall in on the AUCHY AU BOIS St HILAIRE Road with head of column 100 yds S.W. of A Coys. Parade ground at 7.30.a.m.

4. DEBUSSING POINT The Battalion will debus at SERNY and will then rendezvous on the SERNY FLECHINELLE ROAD at the point where the road crosses LAQUETTE RIVER.

5. S.A.A. No live S.A.A. will be carried Pouches will be carefukly inspected and Unit Commanders will be responsible that all live S.A.A. has been removed.

The Q.M. will arrange that each of the busses carry 2 unbroken boxes of S.A.A.for emergency purposes. This S.A.A. will be returned to the stores on return to Billets.

6. LEWIS GUNS Lewis Guns will be carried.Loaded magazines will be left in busses during manouvres.

7. RATIONS Haversack rations will be carried.Sufficient time will be available to make tea on completion of manouvres before the Bn returns to Billets.

Cooks will go with their Coys. and bring dixies,they will remain with busses.

8. TRANSPORT Transport will not move.Officers horses will be sent to the Debussing point under arrangements to be made by the T.O. to be there at 8.30.a.m.

9. DRESS Battle order without steel helmets.

10 MARCHING OUT STATES Marching out states will be handed into Orderly Room by 6.45.a.m.tomorrow.

11. CONFERENCE At the conclusion of the operations a conference will be held on the ground where the Officers call is first sounded. All mounted Officers will attend.

J.D.MACLEOD.
Captain Adjutant.

Copies To 7th.C.I.B. C.O.ADJT.
O.C.A.B.C.D.Coys.
I.O, L.G.O. S.O, T.O.
Q.M, R.S.M. FILE
WAR DIARY (3)

SECRET

OPERATION ORDER NO.192 by
Major R.L.H. Ewing.DSO.MC.
Cmdg. 42nd. Canadian Battn.R.H.C.

COPY NO.

Ref.Maps.
Hazebrouck 5.a. 1/100,000
Lens 11 do

JUNE 25TH 1918

1
INFORMATION

The 7th C.I.Bde (dismounted portion) will move from its present billets to the HABERCQ-AVESNES les COMTES Area by road and rail on the night 25th/26th instant.

Entraining at AIRE
Detraining at AUBIGNY

The 42nd.Can.Battalion,R.H.C., The 49th Can.Battn. E.R. and the 7th T.M.Battery will move by Train No.4. from AIRE.

2
INTENTION

The 42nd. Can. Battalion,R.H.C. will move by Route March from its present billeting Area to AIRE, where it will entrain in No.4 Train and proceed by rail to AUBIGNY where it will detrain and proceed by Route March to the HABERCQ-AVESNES LES COMTES Area.

3.
PARADE

The Battalion will fall in in mass, facing the road, on A Coy's Parade Ground at 5.45 pm.

Coy. and H.Q. markers will report to the B.S.M. on the Parade Ground at 5.35 pm.

4
DRESS

Heavy Marching Order - Steel helmets will be carried on the packs.

5.
TIME

The Battalion will move off at 6. pm.

6.
ORDER OF MARCH

Pipe Band - Headquarters - A - B - C - D Coys.

7.
LEWIS GUNS

Lewis Guns and 30 discs per gun will be carried by the Lewis Gun Crews on the train.

8.
PICQUET

A picquet consisting of Lt. Walter Molson and 6 O.R. per Company will be detailed. O.R. detailed will report to Lt. Molson at head of column when the Battalion reaches the station at AIRE.

8.

Picquet will report to Bde. Entraining Staff Officer at the Station immediately on arrival of the Battalion. They will be on duty during the journey and until the Battalion has completed its detraining. Picquet will be posted under instructions of Bde. Entraining Staff Officer to prevent men wandering away and prevent men leaving the train after entrainment. At intermediate stations where train stops picquet will be used to prevent men leaving the train except to ease themselves

9.
ENTRAINING & DETRAINING OFFICER

Major S. J. Mathewson.MC. will act as Bn. Entraining Officer at AIRE and Bn. Detraining Officer at AUBIGNY.

1 N.C.O. and 1 O.R. per Company and H.Q., and 1 Bn. Runner will report to him at R.T.O's Office AIRE at 7.30 pm.

P.T.O.

10
MARCHING OUT STATES — Marching Out States in the form already prescribed will reach Orderly Room by 5. pm.

11
BILLETS — Billets will be clear of personnel. clean and ready for inspection by 5. pm.

12
REPORTS — Arrival inbillets in the HAVERCQAVESNES les COMTES Area will be reported to Bn. H.Q. by Runner.

13
ACKNOWLEDGE

C. G. HEWARD
Lieut. Asst. Adjt.
For Captain/Adjt.

COPIES TO /
1 H.Q. 7th C.I.Bde
2 O.C. A Coy
3 B
4 C
5 D
6 M.O.
7 R.S.M.
8.9.10 War Diary
11 File.

2/c

Operation Order No. 193 SECRET
by Major R.L.H.Ewing. DSO. MC.
Cmdg 42nd Canadian Battalion. R.H.C. Copy No
Reference Maps June 26th 1918.
Lens 11 - 1/100000
Sheet 51b
Sheet 51c 1/40000

1.INFORMATION The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade will relieve the 6th Canadian Infantry Brigade in the Neuville Vitasse Section on the night 28th/29th June 1918, staging at Bellacourt.

2 INTENTION The Battalion will march from Lettre St. Quentin to Bellacourt on the 27th June 1918. 100 yards distance between companies will be maintained.

3 DRESS Battle order - Steel helmets on the back.

4 Route Via Wanquetin-Simencourt-Baumetz.

5 TIME The Battalion will fall in onthe main road in column of route. the head of the column opposite the Orderly Room ready to move off by ~~xxxxxxx~~ 7.00 am.

6. ~~ARRANGx~~ TRANSPORT Transport will move in rear of column.

7 ADVANCE PARTY An advance party consisting of Q.M. Sgt. and storemen will report to Capt. Beveridge at Q.M. Stores at 7.30 am.

8 KITCHENS Teams will call for kitchens at 7.30 am.

9 OFFICERS KITS MESS BOXES etc. Officers kits mess boxes etc. will be stacked outside Q.M. Stores at 7.15 am.

10 MENS PACKS Mens packs will be stacked outside Q.M. stores at 7.am. 2 men per Company will be detailed to act as a guard. Lieut Proven will be in charge of lorries.

11 MARCHING OUT STATES Marching out states will reach Orderly Room at 7.15 am.

Lieut CG. Heward
Asst Adjt.

Copies to 7th C.I.B.
C.O.
O.C.A.B.C.D Cos.
Q.M. T.O. M.O. S.O.
R.S.M. War Diary (3)
File 1

21

OPERATION ORDER No.194 by
Major R.L.H.Ewing, DSO.M.C.
Cmdg.42nd Canadian Battalion. RHC.

SECRET

Ref.Map
Sheet 51.c.S.E. 1/40,000
Sheet 51.b.S.E. 1/40,000 . . . . . Thursday 27th June 1918.

1. INFORMATION — The 7th C.I.B. will relieve the 6th C.I.B. in the HAUVILLER VITARDE Section on the night of the 28th/29th June 1918.

2 INTENTION — The 42nd Canadian Bn. R.H.C. will relieve the 27th (City of Winnipeg) Bn. in right support.
Companies of the 42nd Cdn. Bn. will relieve corresponding Cos. of the 27th Bn.

3 ORDER OF MARCH — A Co. B Co. H.Q. Details C. Coy. D Co.
A Company will move off at 8 pm. other Cos. will follow at intervals of five minutes.
30 yards will be maintained between platoons.

4 ROUTE — Route via BRETENCOURT-WAILLY.

5 LEWIS GUN Limbers — Company Lewis Gun limbers will leave BELLACOURT at 8.30 pm. and will proceed to the bend of road in WAILLY at R.23.a.8.6. where limbers will be unloaded.
Battalion Lewis Gun Officer and No.1s and 2s of the Lewis Gun crews will accompany limbers and will have the guns and discs ready to be picked up by the crews as the Cos. pass.

6 GUIDES — Guides as per arrangements between Battalions concerned. They will report to Lieut. A.B. Proven at the bend in the road in WAILLY at R.23.a.8.6.at 9.30 am.

7 ADVANCE PARTIES — Advance parties as already detailed

8 OFFICERS PACKS, MESS BOXES etc.
(a) Company Officers bed rolls, mess packs, and other baggage for Q.M.Stores will be piled at either H.Q. mess or Orderly Room at 1 pm.
(b) Officers Trench kits, mess boxes etc. will be put on the Company L.G.limbers by 7.30 pm. After Lewis Guns are unloaded limbers will take the kits to Battalion H.Q.
H.Q Officers kits and mess boxes will be piled at H.Q.Mess by 7.30 pm.
(c) Any further baggage for Q.M.stores will be properly labelled and piled on the square by 7.30 pm. R.S.M. will arrange for a guard.

9. RATIONS — Rations will be carried on the men.

10. WATER — 120 filled water tins will be transported by limber toCompany and Battalion dumps. Filled water cans will also be sent up. Cos. will make their own arrangements for guards.

11 TRENCH STORES — Copies of receipts given for maps, photograms, trench stores etc. will be forwarded to Bn.H.Q. on completion of relief.

P.T.O.

Sheet No.2

12 TRENCH STATES etc	Trench strength states, Distribution states and sketches showing dispositions will be handed in to the Battalion Orderly Room by 8 am 20th inst.
13 RELIEF	Completion of relief will be notified to Battalion H.Q. by using code phrase "Your OO 194 received at ....."
14 Bn.H.Q.	On completion of relief Bn.H.Q. will be in sunken road at M.8.c.3.1.

J.D.Macleod,
Capt, Adjt.

Copies to 7th C.I.Bde.
47th C. of W. Bn.
49th Can. Bn. E.R.
C.O.
O.C. Cos.
Q.M. T.O. I.O. M.O. L.G.O.
R.S.M. War Diary (3)
File 1

CONFIDENTIAL

WAR DIARY.

-------oOo-------

-:- OF -:-

42nd CANADIAN BATTALION 3rd CANADIAN DIVISION

FROM 1st July TO 31st July, 1918.

-------oOo-------

VOLUME 34

With appendices.
1-4

WAR DIARY

42nd Cdn. Battalion 3rd Canadian Division,

from 1st to 31st July, 1918.

Volume 34.

Diary Text	7 Pages.
Appendix I.	Sketch showing patrols, enemy posts, etc.
" 2	List of posts.
" 3	42nd Bn. report on raid night 19th and 20th July.
" 4	42nd Battalion O.O. 195 dated the 5th July, Instructions re relief of 42nd Bn. by 52nd Bn. on the night 6th/7th July.
" 4	O.O. 196 dated 13th July, Instructions for relief of 1st C.M.R. by 42nd Bn. on 14th and 15th July.
"	O.O. 197 dated the 17th July, Instructions re raid on 19th and 20th July.
	O.O. 198 dated the 17th July, Inter-Co relief to be carried out on the 18th/19th July.
	O.O. 199 dated the 24th July, Instruction for relief of 42nd Bn. by 25th Bn. Kings Liverpool Regt. on the night 25th and 26th July
	O.O. 200 dated the 29th July, 3rd Cdn. Divsn. with artillery to move on the 30th July, Instructions for move of 42nd Bn. from WARLUS to INERGNY.
	O.O. 201 dated the 30th July, Instructions from Brigade for entraining at DOULLENS

1-4

34

ORIGINAL

CONFIDENTIAL

W A R D I A R Y

FOR

JULY 1918

42nd CANADIAN BATTALION

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY~~.

(Erase heading not required.)

Army Form C. 2118.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
1918 JULY	1ST.		The month opened with the Battalion still in support in the NEUVILLE VITASSE Sector. During this tour nearly all the working parties were under Battalion direction and consisted of salvaging. A number of stakes and rolls of wire being salvaged. The weather was good; the men's quarters good, and the enemy's attitude quiet.	
	6/7th		On the night July 6/7th the Brigade was relieved in the NEUVILLE VITASSE Sector by the 9th Canadian Infantry Brigade, the Battalion being relieved in the Right Support by the 52nd. Canadian Battalion. Upon relief the Battalion moved into billets at BELLACOURT, the Brigade being in Divisional Reserve.	
	7th.		Lieut. Col. B. McLennan, DSO. proceeded on duty in command of the 7th Canadian Inf. Brigade replacing temporarily Brig. General H.M. Dyer, C.M.G., D.S.O., who had proceeded to take temporary command of the Division in the absence of the G.O.C. Division on leave. Major R.L.H. Ewing, DSO, MC assumed command of the Battalion in the absence of Lieut. Col. McLennan.	
			The Battalion despatched the first detachment of O.R., consisting of eight in all, to the 3rd. Army Rest Camp.	
			During the tour in Divisional Reserve the Battalion carried on with training of specialists, refitting and re-equiping but all personnel except a few engaged in specialist training were employed in daily working parties digging buried cable, and this fact interfered to a large extent with training and smartening up which are so necessary after a tour in the line..	
			During this tour many baseball and lacrosse games were played between platoons and Companies on the excellent ground available for the purpose near the Chateau at BELLACOURT.	
			During this tour the influenza which had been epidemic in the Battalion began to disappear.	
	12th		An opportunity was given to the Battalions of the Division to attach one Officer and four N.C.Os. per Battalion to the Battalions of the Guards Division which formed part of the same Corps (VI Corps). Capt. E. C. Evans "B" Coy., 145378 CSM. Lush, J. "B" Coy., 418784 CSM. Davies, J.M. "D" Coy., 193246 L/Sgt. Little, G. D. "A" Coy., and 478620 Sgt. Savage, C.L. "C" Coy. proceeded to report to the 2nd. Battalion Grenadier Guards for attachment at the Battalion Details Camp at BELLEMONT.	
	14/15th		The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade relieved the 8th Canadian Infantry Brigade in the MERCATEL Sector. The Battalion relieved the 1st. C.M.Rs. in the Right Front Line: A Coy. - Front Line B Coy. - Support C Coy. - Right Reserve D Coy. - Left Reserve. On our right flank were the 3rd. Guards Brigade, the 1st. Battalion, Grenadier	

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY
or
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(Erase heading not required.)

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. Page 2

Army Form C. 2118.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
1918 JULY	14th/15th Cont.		- 1st. Battalion, Welsh Guards and the 2nd. Battalion Scots Guards being in the front line in turn. On our Left flank the 49th Canadian Battalion, E.R., and in Support The Royal Canadian Regiment. On the left of the Brigade was the 9th Canadian Inf. Brigade, the MERCATEL Sector being the Right Brigade Sector of the Divisional Front, and being immediately to the South of the NEUVILLE VITASSE Sector where the Battalion had last been in Support.	
			The most outstanding feature of the Battalion's tour in the line was the nightly patrols. The Battalion frontage was divided into three patrol sectors, i.e., (1) Southern Divl. Boundary to the COJEUL River (2) From the COJEUL River to LONG ALLEY (3) From LONG ALLEY to the SUNKEN ROAD (See Patrol Map attached); each of which was covered by a patrol supplied by one of the Support or Reserve Companies. The Patrols consisted of usually two and always at least one officer, 20 O.R. and a Lewis Gun. Each patrol stayed out on each sector from dusk to dawn. The patrolling each night was most aggressive and careful and twenty-six enemy posts and Machine Guns (list of which is attached) were located by the patrols during the tour.	
			The most notable of the patrols was that carried out on the night of 17th/18th by Lieut. J.M.Morris. He took with him a patrol of 9 O.R. and a covering party of ten O.R., and proceeded from our front line down SHORT ALLEY to the end of that trench where he posted his covering party. He then moved out of the trench and North-West overland to a point in the wire in front of LONG ALLEY, about fifty yards in rear of enemy post located at S.6.d.2.9. (Sheet 51.c.S.W.) (See Patrol Map attached) This enemy post had been located by Lieut. Morris on a previous patrol. Crawling through the grass to the wire Lieut. Morris himself cut by hand a path through the enemy's wire, and brought his patrol safely through the wire. He then moved to the edge of the trench and when challenged jumped in with the patrol and moved South along LONG ALLEY to-wards enemy post. The post was found to be very heavily manned, there being at least twenty Germans in and about the post. As the patrol approached along the trench they were rushed by the enemy. Lieut. Morris shot and killed the first three of the enemy with his revolver, two others were shot and killed by 441863 Pte. Duchame, P.W., and three others were killed by other members of the patrol, making a total of eight enemy known to be killed. The patrol then proceeded down the trench to the location of the post where it was found that a cross trench intersected. A small rear party was left to cover rear approaches and small bombing parties bombed their way down right and left of the cross trenches and forward along LONG ALLEY. By this time the alarm in the enemy's lines had been given and the post was being approached by several parties of the enemy who had been summoned from the ARRAS-BAPAUME Road. With Lieut. Morris and 418536 Pte. White, J. acting as a rear covering party, the party	

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. Page 3

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.~~

(Erase heading not required.)

Army Form C. 2118.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
1918 JULY	14/15th Cont.		numbered off in the trench and when all were found to be present returned overland to SHORT ALLEY and thence to our lines, which they reached without casualties. The greatest credit is due Lieut. Morris and all concerned for this minor operation which was excellently carried out. Only the greatest ill luck in having to kill all the enemy encountered prevented the capture of prisoners.	
			Another feature of the patrolling was the frequent daylight patrols carried out by Capt. L. C. Montgomery, MC. the Scout Officer, and Sergt. Wilson, the Scout Sergt. On three occasions, each time for approximately two hours, they made valuable reconnaissance and located an enemy M.G. Post.	
	18TH.		Captain Hale, MC., Medical Officer of the Battalion, was slightly wounded in the arm and side by a M.G. bullet and was evacuated to hospital. Fortunately the wound was a clean one and in no way serious. The fact of his having become a casualty at this date is a somewhat curious coincidence as at this time the Battalion was receiving telegrams from Canada resulting from an official report which had been received that this officer had died. The mistake having occurred owing to the death a few weeks previous of another Medical Officer of the same name. Captain Baldwin (C.A.M.C.) reported to the Battalion to replace Capt. Hale during the latter's absence.	
	18/19th.		An inter-Company relief took place, C Company relieving A Coy. in the front line. D Company relieved B Coy. in Support. A Company moved into the trenches vacated by C Coy. in Right Reserve, and B Company to those vacated by D Coy. in Left Reserve.	
	19/20th		A raid with artillery barrage was carried out by the Battalion upon the post located and raided by Lieut. Morris. As above mentioned the purpose of the raid was to cut off the post from the South-West, under cover of the barrage and a demonstration to draw the enemy's attention to the North-West. The raiding party consisted of two officers and thirty O.R. from D Company and was divided as follows: (1) Raiding Party: Lieut. Morris and 20 O.R. (2) Covering Party: Lieut. Haydon and 10 O.R. with Lewis Gun.	
			The covering party took up a position at the North end of SHORT ALLEY. The raiding party assembled near the same place and were able to work forward about seventy yards before the barrage opened. The signal to start was the opening of the barrage which fell at 1. am. Raiding Party jumped off from SHORT ALLEY upon the opening of the barrage. Everything worked out according to schedule, but upon the raiding party reaching LONG ALLEY it was found that this	

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY
42nd. Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. Page 4

Army Form C. 2118.

INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place 1918	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
JULY	19/20th Cont.		trench had been badly battered about in the vicinity of the post by our heavies which had been cutting wire, and the post was lightly manned and as soon as our raiding party jumped off the garrison of the post, consisting of three of the enemy, jumped out of the right sap and ran to-wards the ARRAS-BAPAUME Road and into our barrage. When the raiding party reached the post the latter was found to be empty. Although the trench and saps were carefully searched for dugouts and identification the only thing obtained was a haversack containing black bread and fresh butter or margarine. The party then returned to-wards our line from the trench when one of the party was found to be missing. Lieut. Morris called for volunteers and with four O.R returned to the raided post where they were met by a counter attacking party and were forced to withdraw. They returned to our lines which were reached at 2 am. When it was found that the raiding party were all accounted for. Only one casualty was suffered, one of the covering party having been killed by rifle fire. Detailed report on the raid is attached hereto.	
	21st.		The Divisional Commander approved Lieut. H. B. Trout's wearing the badge of Captain pending the approval of his promotion to this rank appearing in List of A.C. & R.	
	21/22nd.		It had been expected that the Brigade would be relieved on the 22nd. but this was posponed and accordingly an inter-Company relief was decided upon and took place as follows: D Coy. relieved C Coy. in the front line - C Company moved to Support Trench vacated by D Coy. - A and B Companies did not change.	
	24th		Following Honours & Awards were published in Part. 11 Daily Orders of the 22nd., received on this date: Major S. C. Norsworthy, DSO, MC. (Bde. Major 8th C.I. Bde) - Mentioned in Sir. Douglas Haig's Despatch of 7.4.18. 418239 CSM. Kennedy, G. W. (DCM.MM.) (deceased) -Mentioned in Sir. Douglas Haig's Despatch of 7.4.18	
	25/26th		The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade were relieved in the MERCATEL Sector by the 176th Infantry Brigade, and two Battalions of the 177th Infantry Brigade. The Battalion was relieved in the frontline by the 25th Battalion, King's Liverpool Regiment. On completion of relief the Companies and Headquarters moved by Route March to MARBLE ARCH where they were to entrain on the Corps Light Railway for WAILUS.	

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C. Page 5

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY~~.

(Erase heading not required.)

Army Form C. 2118.

1918	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
JULY	25/26th Cont.		On arrival at MARBLE ARCH at scheduled hour (2 am.) no trains were found and after waiting a considerable time the Companies marched to-wards WAILLY near which town the trains were located. The trains, however, were insufficient to accommodate the whole of the Battalion. About sixty of the Battalion ~~xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx~~, including eight officers, were left at WAILLY and did not arrive at WARLUS until between 8 ~~an~~ 9. am.	RSH
	26th		Most of the day was spent in resting and cleaning up.	RSH
	27th		The day was spent in bathing, deficiency parades, S.B.R. and Rifle inspections, etc.	RSH
	28th		The Battalion was called upon to supply a fatigue party of 450, working strength, for trench digging in WAGONLIEU Area. The party left at 7.30 am. and worked the whole of the morning, returning about 2.30 in the afternoon.	RSH
			In the afternoon a Baseball Match was played between the Battalion Team and a team representing the Battalion Details of the sister Battalion (The 13th Cdn. Battalion, R.H.C.) these details being situated in WARLUS a short distance from the Battalion quarters. The game was called at the end of the seventh innings on account of darkness - score 7 all.	RSH
			On the night of the 28th telephone advice was received that the Battalion with the rest of the Brigade would move on the 30th instant, destination unknown.	RSH
			Capt. L. C. Montgomery, MC., the Battalion Scout Officer, left to proceed to England for return to Canada to complete his Medical studies. He came to France originally with No. 3 Canadian (McGill) General Hospital, in 1915, and came to the Battalion 27th September 1916, as a Lieutenant with Lieut. C. B. Tingling who died of wounds received on April 9th, 1917. During his career with the Battalion he had been Scout Officer and for a time Second in Command of B Company. He had been wounded three times but fortunately not seriously. He was with the Battalion in the capture of VIMY RIDGE and at PASSCHENDAELE. His second wound was received near the village of La Chaudiere, when he was voluntarily guiding the Hdqrs. of the 49th Cdn. Battalion, E.R., to their quarters. An H.E. Shell fell in the party killing two and wounding four, including Major Weaver, 2nd. in Command of the 49th Cdn. Battalion, E.R., and Lieut. Montgomery himself. In spite of his wounds which were numerous Capt. Montgomery carried Major Weaver to the dressing station and dressed his wounds after which he himself was evacuated a stretcher case.	RSH

2353 Wt. W2544/1454 700,000 5/15 D. D. & L. A.D.S.S./Forms/C. 2118.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. Page 6

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY~~

(Erase heading not required.)

Army Form C. 2118.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
1918 JULY	28th Cont.		His services with the Battalion have been of an outstanding character and his departure is regretted by all.	
	29th		A second game of baseball was played with the Battalion Details of the 13th Can. Battalion, R.H.C., and resulted in a victory for the latter - Score 3 - 1. Capt. Wm. Hale, MC. (C.A.M.C.) Medical Officer of the Battalion, returned from hospital and Captain G. Baldwin ceased to be attached.	
	30th		The Battalion fell in, in Battle Order, at 8.15am. and moved off at 8.30 with Transport. Order of March of the Brigade:- The Royal Canadian Regiment - The 49th Can. Battalion, E.R. - The 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. - and the P.P.C.L.I. Route:- BERNEVILLE - SIMENCOURT - GOUY-EN-ARTOIS - BAVINCOURT - SAULTY - COUTURELLE - WARLUZEL - SUS-ST.LEGER - IVERGNY. The Battalion arrived at last named place at 4.45pm., a rest of 1½ hours having been made between 12 noon and 1.30 pm. - The Battalion moved into billets, after a march of seventeen miles. On arrival notification was received that the Lewis Gun Limbers, four Cookers and one Water Cart would entrain at DOULLENS at 1.45 pm. 31st. inst., and proceed to SALEUX (near AMIENS), and that the personnel of the Battalion would proceed by Route March to BOUQUEMAISON, entraining at 8.pm. 31st., detraining at SALEUX, balance of transport to move by Route March.	
	30th./31st		At 11.30 pm. notification was received of the cancellation of these orders and under the following instructions the Lewis Gun Limbers, Water Cart and Cookers entrained at DOULLENS at 1.45 am. 31st. inst. and the Battalion proceeded by Route March to BOUQUEMAISON and entrained at 8. am. 31st. instant. In spite of the heat of the day a very good march was made by the Battalion and the entraining took place as arranged, the balance of the Transport remained at IVERGNY to proceed by Route March under Brigade Transport Officer at a time to be notified later. The Limbers, Cookers, etc. and the personnel detrained at SALEUX; personnel then marched to a field a few kilometers outside of SALEUX where they bivouaced for the afternoon. They were met by the Cookers and Water Cart, tea being issued. In the evening they proceeded to the village of DURY where part of the Battalion went into billets and huts and the remainder bivouaced under the trees. Meanwhile the balance of the transport which had remained at IVERGNY moved off at 1.10am. Aug. 1st. to proceed to the new area by Route March. This was the first time the Battalion had been in the Area South of AMIENS, or in fact, any point as far South. The Area was occupied by French Troops, the town of DURY being	

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C. Page 7

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY~~

(Erase heading not required.)

Army Form C. 2118.

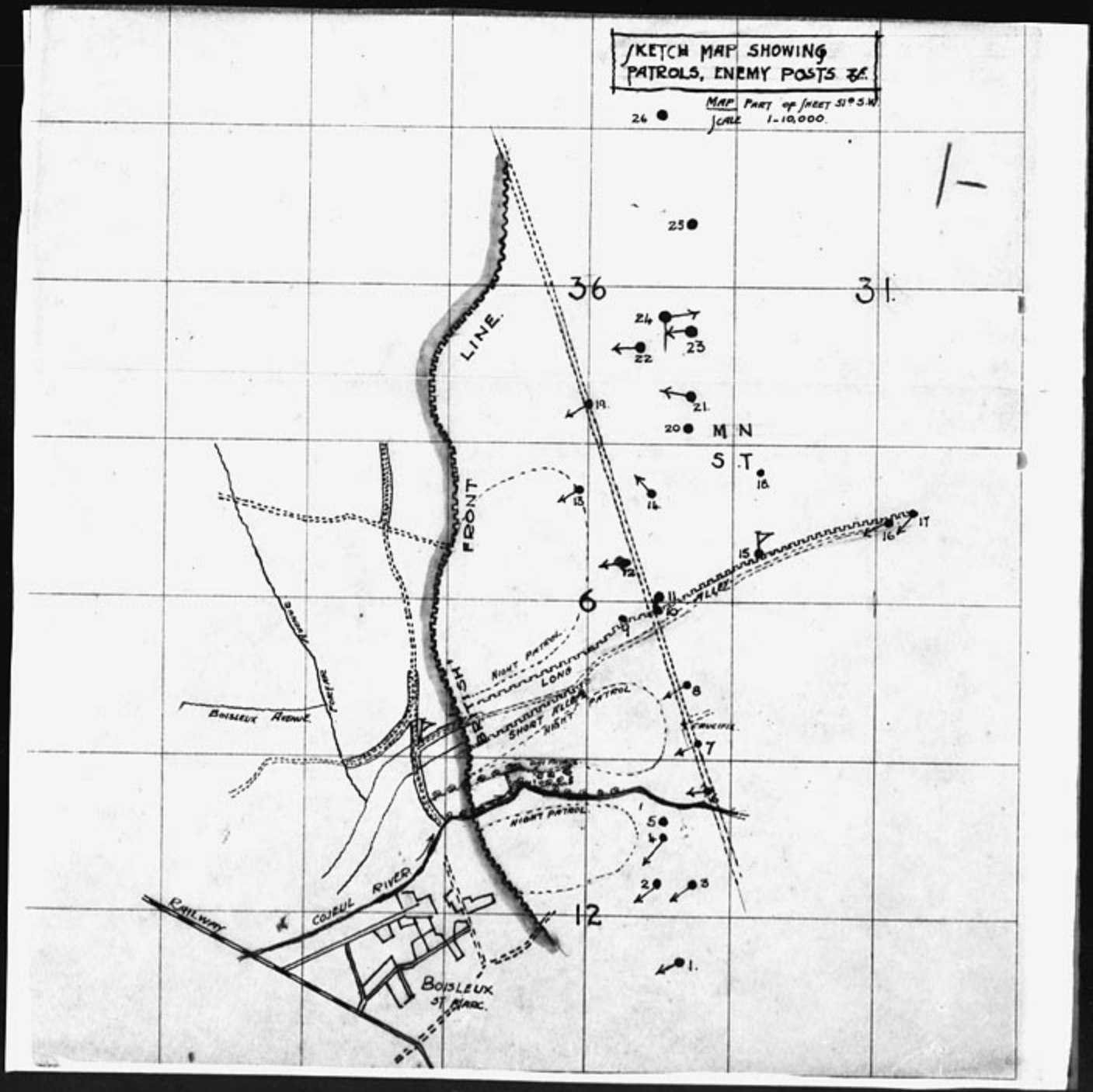
1918	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
JULY	31st		occupied by H. Q. of the 31st. Corps d'amee. Much interest was displayed by the French troops and civilians in the Highland dress of the Battalion. Officers of the Headquarters were most kind in assisting us to make billeting arrangements in a strange area, and two very pleasant evenings were spent with the Officers of one of the H. Q. Messes in their Villa, part of which they had permitted our Officers to occupy.	

Casualties during month:-

	OFFICERS	O. R	TOTAL
Killed		2	2
Died of Wounds		2	2
Wounded	1	10	11
	1	14	15

Lieut. Colonel,
Cmdg. 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.

2353 Wt. W2544/1454 700,000 5/15 D. D. & L. A.D.S.S./Forms/C. 2118.


SKETCH MAP SHOWING
PATROLS, ENEMY POSTS &c.
MAP PART OF SHEET 51° S.W.
SCALE 1-10,000.
36
31.
6
12
FRONT LINE.
BRITISH
M N
S T
NIGHT PATROL
LONG
SHORT ALLEY
NIGHT PATROL
NIGHT PATROL
BOISLEUX AVENUE
COJEUL RIVER
RAILWAY
BOISLEUX ST MARC.
1
2
3
4
5
7
8
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25

2

No.1 M.G.26.6 Patrol and observed
No.2 M.G.12.6 Patrol and since observed
No.3 M.G. 18.7. Observed and patrol
No.4 M.G. 2.7. Patrol and observed.
No.5 Suspected post 4.7. patrol.
No.6 M.G.E. 18.7. Patrol and observed
No.7. M.G.E. 23.7. Patrol and observed
No.8. M.G. 15.7. Patrol and observed
No.9. Post Raid 20.7
No.10.Post Raid 20.7.
No.11 T.M. (Suspected) Observed firing
No.12 M.G. and T.M. 12.7. Patrol and observed
No.13 M.G. Patrol 23.7.
No.14 T.M. Observed and patrol 21.7.
No.15 Suspected O.P. and Company H.Q. observed
No.16 M.G. observed 21.7.
No.17 M.G. observed 18.7.
No.18 T.M. observed 10.7.
No.19 M.G. Patrol 23.6.
No.20 M.G. observed 21.7.
No.21 M.G. observed 21.7.
No.22 M.G. Patrol 10.7.
No.23 M.G. patrol 21.7.
No.24 M.G. patrol 18.7.
No.25 T.M. patrol and observed.
No.26 Block in trench 12.7. patrol.

W.D.

3

42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.
REPORT ON RAID.
Night 19th/20th July 1918.

COVERING PARTY

At 11.20 pm. Lieut. Hayden and 10 O.R. who were to form the covering party for the raid on enemy post at S.6.d.20.80 left our lines at S.6.c.11.10 and proceeded along SHORT ALLEY. When party had crossed through our wire hostile patrol of approximately 20 were observed travelling N.E. at approximately S.6.c.40.70 but could not be engaged owing to the risk of interfering with the raid itself. Party worked its way to the head of sap and took a position at S.6.c.10.59.

RAIDING PARTY

Lieut.Morris with 20 O.R. then followed up SHORT ALLEY and left S.6.c.15.59 at 12.25 am. and headed for a small SUNKEN TRAIL parallelling trench some 45 yards out, there they lay waiting for zero hour. At zero hour barrage came down and patrol immediately rushed trench which they reached without fire from the enemy. Just as they were jumping into the trench, three of the enemy were observed to get out of right sap and run towards ARRAS-PAUPAUME ROAD and into our barrage. One N.C.O. and 4 O.R. rushed the left sap and bombed their way up only to find it empty. 1 N.C.O. and 4 O.R. dealt in a similar manner with the right sap which was also found unoccupied. Lieut.Morris and 5 O.R. moved down the sap to block which they found had been completely destroyed by previous days shelling and was also unoccupied. Patrol then moved up the sap as far as the ARRAS-BAUPAUME ROAD without encountering any enemy, but were unable to proceed further owing to our own barrage. At this moment a party of approximately 20 Huns were observed some 200 yards to the north of LONG ALLEY running towards their own wire, apparently a patrol. This party was engaged by rifle fire and was last seen trying to work their way through their own wire and into our barrage. Party then searched the trench and saps carefully for dugouts and identification. The only thing obtained was a haversack containing black bread and fresh butter or margarine. Party then moved from trench towards our lines, when it was discovered that one of party was missing. At 1.30 Lieut. Morris called for volunteers and with 4 O.R. returned to raided post. On entering post they were met by a local counter attack party and were forced to withdraw. The whole of party then returned to our lines which was reached at 2 am. Meanwhile Lieut.Hayden and party remained at Head of SHORT ALLEY and engaged the only machine gun which was seriously interfering with the raiding party with Lewis Gun fire. While doing this he had one man killed by rifle fire, but returned to our lines at 2.20 am. bringing back the body and all equipment, when it was reported to him that the raiding party were all accounted for.

DIVERSION

It had been arranged that as soon as barrage opened two red flares would be fired from our left flank followed

SHEET NO.2

by a discharge of six rifle grenades to similate an attack from that quarter. The Hun apparently 'fell' for this ruse, as he immediately turned heavy machine gun fire in direction of smoke.

BARRAGE

Barrage was quite good throughout and silenced all selected Machine Guns with the exception of gun at S.6.d.70.50 which could not be taken on by 4.5 Howitzer owing to proximity to raided post. This gun was silenced by Lieut.Hayden with Lewis Gun fire.

ENEMY BARRAGE.

Enemy barrage came down at 2 minutes after zero consisting of 77 millimetre shells a short distance between front line, while 4.1 and 5.9 shells were placed along SUNKEN ROAD in S.5.d. and T.1.a.

FLARES

His S.O.S. signal seemed to be double red and green flares, while golden sprays seemed to indicate the flanks of attack.

CASUALTIES

1 O.R. killed by rifle fire

CAPTURED RATIONS

Herewith by bearer sample of rations, butter etc. found on post.

Attached please find table of enemy barrage flares etc.

Lieut. Col.
Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.

21

4

OPERATION ORDER NO.195 by
Major R.L.H. Ewing, DSO., M.C.
Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.

SECRET

Reference maps 51.c. S.E.)
51.b. S.W.(1/20,000

FRIDAY, 5th July 1918.

---

1. **INFORMATION** — The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade will be relieved in the NEUVILLE VITASSE Sector by the 9th. Canadian Infantry Brigade on the night 6th/7th July 1918.

2. **INTENTION** — The 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. will be relieved in right support by the 52nd. Canadian Battalion and will move into Divisional reserve at BELLACOURT.

3. **DISPOSITIONS** — Companies will be relieved by corresponding Companies of the 52nd Battalion.

4. **GUIDES** — Two guides per platoon and two for Battalion Headquarters will report to Lieut. A.B.Proven at WAILLY HUTS (R.22.d.1.6.) by 2.30 pm. Companies will arrange that a senior N.C.O. is in charge of each party.

5. **BAGGAGE** — Officers' kits, Companies mess boxes, surplus water tins, salvage etc. will be piled at Company ration dumps by 8.00 pm. to be taken out by limber. Companies will detail a guard of two men each to remain with baggage and go out on the with Transport. H.Q. baggage will be piled at H.Q. dump by 8.00 pm.

6. **LEWIS GUNS** — On completion of relief Lewis Guns, discs etc. will be piled at Company dumps. Companies will arrange for a guard of two men each to remain with Lewis Guns and act as loading party. Lewis Gun limbers will report at dumps by 11.00 pm.

7. **RECEIPTS FOR TRENCHES** — O.Cs. Companies will be responsible that the trenches are left in a clean and sanitary condition and will obtain certificates from the advance parties of the incoming Battalion to this effect. Trench stores will be collected and a careful inventory taken.

8. **DETAILS** — All details at present at BEAUMETZ will rejoin the Battalion tomorrow night. Lieut. C.G.Heward will detail advance parties to take over billets at BELLACOURT. All details will be at BELLACOURT by 9.00 pm.

9. **TRENCH STORES** — Defence schemes, aeroplane photographs, thirty water tins per Company and thirty for Battalion H.Q. will be handed over upon relief. Copies of receipts obtained will be forwarded to Battalion H.Q. by 8.00 pm. the 6th inst.

10/ **RELIEF.** — Completion of relief will be reported by wire, using the code phrase "Your 00195 received at ....."

J.D.MACLEOD,

Capt. Adjt.

P.T.O.

Copies to :-

7th C.I. B.
52nd Canadian Bn.
C.O.
O.C. A.B.C.D Cos.
Q.M. T.O. M.O. R.S.M.
War Diary (3)
File 1. REAR

SECRET

OPERATION ORDER NO.196 COPY NO.; 17

by

Major R.L.H. Ewing, D.S.O., M.C.

Cmdg. 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.

Ref. Maps:- 51.c.S.E. 1/20,000
51.b.S.W. do

SATURDAY, JULY 13TH, 1918

1. INFORMATION — The 7th Cdn. Infantry Brigade will relieve the 8th Cdn. Infantry Brigade in the MERCATEL Sector on the night 14th/15th July.

2. INTENTION — The 42nd. Cdn. Battalion, R.H.C., from billets at BELLACOURT will relieve the 1st. C.M.R. Battalion in the Right Front Line
A Coy. will relieve in the Front Line
B COY. in Support
C Coy. in Right Reserve
D Coy. in Left Reserve.

3. ORDER OF MARCH & TIME — A Coy - B Coy - H.Q. Details - C Coy. - D Coy.
A Company will move off at 9.15 pm. - Intervals of 100 yards will be maintained between platoons and of five minutes between Companies.

4. ROUTE — BRETENCOURT - BLAMONT MILL - WAILLY-FICHEUX Road, to junction on Main BOIRY Road

5. ADVANCE PARTIES — Advance Parties of 1 Officer per Company and 1 N.C.O. and 1 O.R. per platoon and Capt. Montgomery and 2 N.C.Os. from Bn. H.Q. will leave billets at 10. am. to-morrow 14th instant. They will be responsible for taking over all trench stores etc.

6. PATROLS — Officers i/c Patrols and a proportion of O.R. selected for patrol work to-morrow night, will leave billets at 1.30 pm. to-morrow to look over their areas.

7. GUIDES — (a) Guides from the 1st. C.M.R. Battn. will report to Companies in BELBACOURT at 7. pm. to-morrow.
(b) 4 O.R. per Company from the Advance Parties will report to Lieut. Proven, at point where limbers are being unloaded, at 10. pm., and will act as joint guides with the C.M.R. to bring in their platoons.

8. LEWIS GUN LIMBERS — Coy. L.G. Limbers will leave BELLACOURT at 9.10 pm., and will report to Lieut. A. B. Proven at junction of BOIRY Road and MERCATEL SWITCH (S.3.a.05.50) where limbers will be unloaded. Nos. 1s and 2s. of the L.G. Crews will accompany them.
Lieut. A. B. Proven will arrange that two guides meet the limbers at the junction of the WAILLY-BOIRY Road to guide them to the unloading point.

9. BAGGAGE FOR Q.M. STORES — Coy. Officers' bed rolls, mess boxes, mens' packs and other baggage for the Q.M. Stores will be piled at the Coy. Cook Kitchens - H.Q. Officers' bed rolls etc. at H.Q. Mess - Orderly Room boxes at Orderly Room, by 1.00 pm.

10 BAGGAGE FOR TRENCHES — Officers' Trench Kits, mess boxes, dixies etc. for the trenches will be loaded on Coy. L.G. Limbers and H.Q. Officers' Trench Kits and Orderly Room boxes will be piled at H.Q. Mess by 7.30 pm.
After Lewis Guns are unloaded one limber will be sent up to Support Company dump with baggage for A and B Coys. Lieut. A. B. Proven will arrange for guides to take this limber forward.

P. T. O.

10

RATIONS

Rations will be carried in on the men.

12.
WATER

120 filled water tins will be transported by limber to Company and Battalion dumps.

13.
TRENCH STORES

Copies of receipts given for Trench Stores, Maps, Photographs etc. will be forwarded to Bn. H.Q. on completion of relief.

14
TRENCH STATES

Trench Strength States, Disposition States and Sketches showing positions will be handed into Battn. Orderly Room by 8. am. 15th instant.

15
RATION PARTIES

B Company will be responsible for carrying A Coy's rations from Support Company's dump to the Front Line.

A Company will have guides report back to dump to-morrow night immediately after relief to guide up the ration parties.

16.
RELIEF

Completion of relief will be notified to Battalion H.Q. by wire using the code phrase " Your O.O.196 received at_____"

17.
BN. H.Q.

On completion of relief Bn. H.Q. will be at S.4.a.25.45.

J. D. MACLEOD,

Captain/Adjutant.

Copy No. 1	to 7th C.I.Bde	10	Scout O.
2	1st. C.M.R. Bn.	11	L.G. O.
3.	C.O.	12	Sig. O.
4.	2 i/c	13	I.O.
5.	Adjutant	14	Q.M.
6	O.C. A Coy	15	M.O.
7	" B	16.	D.O.
8	" C	17 -19	War Diary
9	" D	20	File.
		21	R.A.M.

WD

SECRET

OPERATION ORDER 197
BY
MAJOR R.L.R. SWING D.S.O. M.C.
CMDG. 42nd. CANADIAN BATTALION. R.H.C.

Copy No. 11

Ref. Maps 51.b.S.W.1/20,000 — 17th. July. 1918.

1. INTENTION — A Raid will be carried out to cut off enemy post at S.6.D.2.9. from the S.W. under a cover of a barrage with a demonstration to attract enemies attention to the N.W.

2. PARTIES — 2 Officers and 30 O.Rs. (D.Coy) with L.G. divided as follows -
No. 1 Raiding party Lieut. Morris and 20 O.R.
No. 2 Covering Party Lieut. Hayden and 10 O.R. with L.G.

3. ACTION — (a) Covering Party (No. 2) will take up a position covering north end of SHORT ALLEY S.6.d.1.6. to be in position 30 minutes before zero hour and will remain until the raiding party withdraws through them or till zero hour plus 10.
(b) Raiding Party (No. 1) will assemble towards North end of SHORT ALLEY in time to jump off at zero. Opening of barrage to be the signal.
(c) O.C, C Coy. will detail one officer to be i/c of party to discharge 2 red flares to be followed by 6 No. 27 Rifle grenades from front line at North Battalion boundary, S.6.a.0.6. immediately after barrage opens.

4. ZERO HOUR — 1.00 am. night 19th/20th July 1918.

5. BARRAGE — As per Appendix A.

6. SIGNAL TO START — Opening of barrage.

7. PATROLS — Company Patrols will be withdrawn by midnight.

8. SYNCHRONIZATION OF WATCHES — Watches will be synchronized at 9.00 pm. by runner

9. ADVANCED R.A.P. — Support Company H.Q. Sunken Road at S.11.a.40.90.

10. CHANGE OF HOUR — In the event of change of zero hour the following code phrase will be used "MONTREAL plus or minus" followed by the number of minutes.
Example "MONTREAL plus 30" will mean zero hour 1.30 am.

11. RAID CANCELLED — "NAPOO"

J. D. MACLEOD,
Capt. & Adjt.

Copy No. 1 7th C.I.B.
2 33rd L.G. C.F.A.
3 1st Grenadier Guards
4. 49th Cdn. Bn. (28.)
5 C.O. A Coy.
6. O.C. B Coy.
7 O.C. C Coy.
8 O.C. C Coy.
9. O.C. D. Coy.
No. 10 Lieut. Hayden.
11, 12, 13 War Diary.
14 File
15. Lieut Morris

W.D.

S E C R E T

OPERATION ORDER No. 198
by
Major R.L.H. Ewing, D.S.O., M.C.
Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.

Copy No. 11.

17th July 1918.

1. INTENTION — There will be an inter Company relief tomorrow night, 18th/19th July 1918.

2. DISPOSITIONS — C Company will relieve A Company in the front line. D Company will relieve B Company in Support. On completion of relief A Company will move back into trenches vacated by C Company in Right Reserve and B Company to those of D Company in left reserve. All arrangements in connection with relief will be made by Company Commanders concerned.

3. TIME — C and D Cos. will not move from their present position until 9.45 pm. and will go forward by overland routes.

4. PATROLS — Patrols will be carried on as usual, with the exception that A and C Cos. will arrange a joint patrol tomorrow night.

5. WORKING PARTIES — Company Commanders will arrange that working parties are interfered with as little as possible.

6. RATIONS — D Company will be responsible for carrying C Coy's rations and water to the front line.

7 COMPLETION OF RELIEF — Completion of relief will be notified to Bn. H.Q. by wire using the code phrase "Your OO.198 received at ....."

J.D.MACLEOD,
Capt. Adjt.

Copies to No.1 7th C.I.B. No.2 49th Cdn.Bn. (H.R.)
3 C.O. 4 O.C.A. Coy.
5 O.C. B Coy 6 O.C. C Coy.
7. O.C. D Coy 8. Q.M.
9. T.O. 10, 11, 12 War Diary
13. File.

Copy No. 14

OPERATION ORDER No. 199

SECRET

by Lt. Col. B. McLennan, D.S.O.
Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.

Wednesday, 24th July 1918.

Ref. Maps : 51. c. S. E.) 1/20,000
51. b. S. W.)
LENS 11 - 1/100,000

1. INFORMATION — 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade will be relieved in the MERCATEL SECTOR on the night 25th/26th July 1918, by the 176th Infantry Brigade and 2 Battalions of the 177th Infantry Brigade.

2. INTENTION — The 25th Battalion, King's Liverpool Regiment will relieve the 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. in the right sub-sector (front line).

On completion of relief the Battalion will move by train to WARLUS where it will go into G.H.Q. Reserve and be prepared to move on 12 hours notice.

3. ENTRAINING POINT — MARBLE ARCH - Details later.

4. DISPOSITION — Companies will be relieved by corresponding Companies of the 25th Battalion, King's Liverpool Regiment.

5. GUIDES — Guides - 2 per platoon, 2 per Coy. H.Q. and 2 for Battalion H.Q. under Lieut. A. B. Proven will proceed to to BRETENCOURT on the night of 24th/25th July 1918, and will report to the relieving Battalion.

6. PATROLS — Companies will send out usual patrols on night of relief. They will report in at 1.45 am.

7. REAR PARTY — As already detailed.

8. LEWIS GUNS — On completion of relief Lewis Guns and Magazines will be carried to Company Dumps and loaded on limbers. Lewis Gun limbers will report by 11 pm.

9. BAGGAGE — Officers' kits, mess boxes, water tins, dixies, salvage etc. will be piled at respective ration dumps by 10 pm.

10. RECEIPTS FOR TRENCHES — Officers Commanding Cos. will be responsible that trenches are left in a clean and sanitary condition and will obtain certificates from the advance parties of incoming Battalion to this effect.

11. TRENCH STORES — All maps, aeroplane photographs and trench stores will be handed over upon relief and a copy of receipt obtained will be forwarded to Battalion H.Q. by 6 pm. 25th inst.

12. RELIEF. — Completion of relief will be reported by wire using the code phrase "Your O.O.199 received at....."

J. D. MACLEOD,
Capt. Adjt.

0

Copies to -

No. 1 7th Canadian Inf. Bde.
2 25th Bn. King's Liverpool Regiment.
3C.O.
4.O.C. A.B.C.D. Cos. (4-7)
8.Left Battalion
9 Right Battalion
10. Q.M. 11. T.O. 12. R.S.M.
13. Rear
14/16 War Diary
17 File

SECRET

OPERATION ORDER NO. 300 COPY NO. 15

by

Lt. Col. B. McLennan, DSO

Ref. Map Cmdg. 42nd. Canadian Battn. R. H. C.

LENS 11 - 1/100,000 MONDAY, JULY 29TH, 1918

1 INFORMATION The 3rd. Canadian Division, with Divl. Artillery will move on the 30th July to LUCHEUX, VI Corps Area, replacing 57th Division, and will entrain 31st. inst., at DOULLENS, MONDICOURT and BOUCHEMAISON

2 INTENTION The 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C. will move by Route March from WARLUS to IVERGNY.

3 PARADE The Battalion will fall in, in mass, on the Battalion Parade Ground, ready to move off, at 8.15 am.

4 ORDER OF MARCH Headquarters - A - B - C - D Coys & Transport. Intervals of 100yds. will be maintained between Coys & 500yds. between Units.

5 DRESS Battle Order - Steel Helmets on Backs

6 STARTING POINT West end of Church GOUY-EN-ARTOIS
Battalion will pass Starting Point at 10.30 am.

7 ROUTE BERNEVILLE - SIMENCOURT - GOUY-EN-ARTOIS - BAVINCOURT - SAULTY - COUTURELLE - WARLUZEL - SUS-ST.LEGER - IVERGNY.

8. HALTS The Battalion will halt at ten minutes to each clock hour and resume the march at the clock hour.
Halt for lunch will be made from 12 noon until 1.30pm.

9 OFFICERS KITS, MESS BOXES ETC. Men's Packs will be piled in front of the Orderly Room by 6.30 am.
Officers Kits and Mess Boxes will be at Q.M. Stores by 7.15am

10 INSPECTION Huts will be clear of personnel, clean, and ready for inspection by 7.30am.

11 MARCHING OUT STATES Marching Out States will be handed in to Orderly Room by 8. am.

J. D. MACLEOD,

Captain/Adjutant

Issued at 11.30pm. to

	Copy No.		
H. Q. 7th C.I.B.	1		
C.O.	2		
2 i/c	3		
Adjutant	4	T.O.	13
O.C. A Coy.	5	RSM	14
B	6	War Diary	15. 16. 17
C	7	File	18
D	8	880	19
M.O.	9		
Q.M.	10		
Scout O.	11		
Sig. O.	12		

OPERATION ORDER No. 201 by
Lt. Col. B. McLennan. D.S.O.
S E C R E T Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. Copy No.....

O.C. A.B.C.D Cos.
Scout O. R.S.M. Sig Sgt.

July 30th 1918.

Orders have been received from Brigade that four Company Kitchens and one water cart and the four Lewis Gun limbers will entrain at DOULLENS at 2.45 am. 31st instant (tonight) - leaving at 12.30 am. 31st instant (tonight) and will detrain at SALEUX (near AMIENS)

The balance of the transport will proceed by road to the same place. Time to be notified later.

The Battalion will entrain at 8 am. tomorrow 31st. at BOUQUEMAISON detraining at SALEUX.

One Cook and one helper per Company will accompany each Field Kitchen Three Dixies per Company will be kept for the purpose of cooking Breakfast, and will be loaded with the baggage on the transport which proceeds by roads.

RATIONS will be drawn by Companies from Q.M. at 1.30 am.
Reveille will be at 4.30 am.
Breakfast 6 - "

Officers baggage and Mess Boxes will be at Q.M. stores by 5.30am. Companies and H.Q. will detail fatigue of 30 per Company and H.Q. to carry baggage, mess boxes etc. to the stores and to assist in loading.

MARCHING OUT STATES to reach Orderly Room by 5.30 am.

The Battalion will proceed by Route March to BOUQUEMAISON leaving at 6.30 a.m.

DRESS. Fighting kit for all ranks with packs. This will include Wire cutters, Very Pistols, Grenade Caps, etc. etc.

Packs will be carried on kicking straps.

Rations. Breakfast will be served to themen before leaving, balance of the twenty four hour rations will be carried on the men.

The cooks who remain with the Battalion will cook tonight the meat which is to be carried on the men.

C.G. Howard,
Lieut. Asst. Adjt.
for Capt. Adjt.

CONFIDENTIAL

WAR DIARY.

--------oOo--------

-:- OF -:-

42nd CANADIAN BATTALION — 3rd CANADIAN DIVISION

FROM 1st August TO 31st August 1918

--------oOo--------

VOLUME 35

with appendices
1-13

WAR DIARY.

42nd Canadian Battalion - 3rd Canadian Division.

From 1st August to 31st August, 1918.

Volume 18 - 8.

Diary Text 16 Pages.

appendix 0	O.O. No. 202. Re MOVE from HEBECOURT area to ST. FUSCIEN area 3/3-8/18.
Appendix 1.	Report on operation of 42nd Cdn. Bn. on 8.8.18.
" 2 to 5.	Report on operations of 42nd Canadian Battalion from 12.8.18. to 28.8.18.
" 6.	Orders issued by 42nd Canadian Battalion from 2.8.18. to 6.8.18.
" 7.	Orders issued to 42nd Canadian Battalion dated 5.8.18.
" 8 & 9.	Orders issued by 42nd Canadian Battalion dated 12.8.18. and 15.8.18.
" 10.	Letter of appreciation issued to 42nd Cdn. Bn. dated 18.8.18.
" 11 to 13.	Maps.

1-13

35

ORIGINAL

CONFIDENTIAL

WAR DIARY

AUGUST 1918.

42nd CANADIAN BATTALION

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.~~

(Erase heading not required.)

Army Form C. 2118.

Place 1918	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
AUGUST	1ST.		The Battalion still in billets at DIRY. On the night of August 1st. the Pipe Band played at a Mess of the Headquarters Signal Officers of the 31st. Corps d'armee, afterwards the Headquarter officers of the Battalion visited this Mess and spent an enjoyable evening.	
	2ND.		Lieut. J. A. P. Haydon was transferred from C Company to the Scout Section. On the night of August 2nd. the Battalion moved from DIRY to ST. RUSCIEN, leaving about 8.30pm. and arriving at about 10.pm. On arrival the Battalion went into billets.	
	3RD.		On this date the Battalion suffered the severest blow in its history in the death by enemy shell fire of the Commanding Officer, Lieut. Col. Bartlett McLennan, D.S.O. He was killed in the forward area while making a personal reconnaissance of the country over which the Battalion was to attack some days later. Lieut. Col. McLennan had joined the Battalion as Junior Major upon its organization in 1915. He was with the Battalion in this capacity all through its period of training in Canada and England, and came to France with the Battalion in October, 1915 as Second in Command. In July, 1916 he was very seriously injured when his horse fell upon him. He was invalided to England but returned to France and assumed command of the Battalion with the rank of Lieut. Colonel in April, 1917. He was awarded the Distinguished Service Order in January, 1917, in recognition of his outstanding services in the engagement of June 2nd., 1916 near YPRES. He was three times mentioned in despatches of the commander-in-Chief. His death is an irreparable loss, not only to the Battalion which he loved, and for which he rendered such brilliant and devoted service, but also to the Brigade and Division. All ranks who had the privilege of serving under his command had learned to love him as a friend and counsellor, and to admire him as a brilliant and gallant soldier and gentleman.	
	4TH		The funeral of Lieut. Col. B. McLennan, D.S.O. took place to LONGUEAU Cemetery. It was attended by the officers and senior N.C.Os. of the Battalion, a Firing Party of 40 O.R. and the Pipe Band. At the grave side were present the Corps Commander - Lt. General	

D. D. & L., London, E.C.
(A1066) Wt W3500/P793 750,000 4/18 Sch. 52 Forms/C2118/6

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY

62nd. Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.~~

(Erase heading not required.)

Sheet 2

Army Form C. 2118.

Place 1918	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
AUGUST	4TH.		Sir Arthur W. Currie, K.C.B., K.C.M.G.; the Divisional Commander - Major-General L. J. Lipsett, C.B., C.M.G., and the Brigadier - Brig. General Hugh M. Dyer, C.M.G., D.S.O., and many other distinguished officers.	
			Announcement appeared in Divisional Orders of the award of the Military Medal to the following O.R. of this Battalion for the part they had taken in the splendid patrol under Lieut. J. M. Morris and the subsequent raid under the same officer on the nights of 17/18th and 19th/20th July:-	
			901119 Sgt. E. L. Cuvilier, 418761 Pte. J. Waldvogel, 441863 Pte. W. P. Ducharme, 192625 " J. E. Williams	
			On this date the very secret announcement was made that the Battalion would take part in a large offensive operation on the AMIENS Front in co-operation with Tanks, R.A.F. Squadrons, Cavalry, Motor M.G's. etc. From this time on every available moment was spent in intensive preparation for the Show.	
	5TH		Lieut. W. J. Murray, C Company, was detached to the 7th T.M. Battery, replacing Lieut. A. G. Johnston, who had been detached to the Battery but had recently been transferred to the 3rd. Canadian Machine Gun Battalion.	
	6TH		The Battalion moved by night to GENTELLES WOOD, starting off at 9.30pm. and proceeding by route march via ST. FUSCIEN 2nd. class road. One of the remarkable features of this march was the tremendous amount of troops, transport, tanks, guns and other machinery of war which was passed on the road up making our progress very slow, the Battalion arriving about 1.am. and bivouacing in the Wood. The utmost secrecy was essential and as a result no lights could be shown after dark or smoke by daylight.	
	7TH		The day was spent in GENTELLES WOOD making final preparations for the Show which was to take place in the early morning of the 8th. At about 10.pm. the Battalion moved off by Platoons from the Wood to GENTELLES Trench - U. 19. a. & c. (DEMUIN Sheet att.) which was the First Assembly Position.	
			On the same evening the Details left out of the Operation returned to SAINS-EN-AMIENOIS.	
			The Operation in which the Battalion was to take part on the following day was	

D. D. & L., London, E.C.
(A1006) Wt W3500/P713 750,000 9/18 Sch. 52 Forms/C2118/16

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C. Sheet 3

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.~~

(Erase heading not required.)

Army Form C. 2118.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
1918 AUGUST	7TH		a very important one, extending over approximately twenty miles of front, of which the Canadian Corps held approximately a central position. Described generally the Operation intended was an attack on the enemy's positions to the East and South-East of AMIENS with the object of driving him back and freeing the main line of railway between AMIENS and PARIS. On the right of the Canadians were the French, and on the left the Australian Corps. The 3rd. Canadian Division was on the right of the Corps; the 1st. Canadian Division in the centre and the 2nd Canadian Division on the left. The 4th Canadian Division was in reserve during the first stage of the attack and was to pass through the 3rd. Canadian Division. Artillery, Tanks, Machine Gun Battalions, Motor Machine Gun Brigades and Cavalry, together with large squadrons of aeroplanes including Contact, Bombing, Scouting and Fighting 'planes were co-operating with the other branches of the service.	
			The 9th Canadian Infantry Brigade was to "jump off" at Zero and to capture the enemy's positions up to and including the GREEN LINE (See DEMUIN Sheet att.) The 7th Cdn. Infantry Brigade was to pass through the 9th Canadian Infantry Brigade when the latter had reached its objective at Zero plus 4 hours and capture the enemy's position up to and including the RED LINE (See DEMUIN Sheet) The 9th and 7th Canadian Infantry Brigades were on the right of the Division and operated with their right flank on the AMIENS-ROYE Road. The 9th Canadian Infantry Brigade frontage at the outset was about 2,200 yards and at its objective about 3,200 yards. The 7th Cdn. Infantry Brigade frontage at its "jumping off" position was about 3,200 yards and at its objective about 4,000 yards (See DEMUIN Sheet). The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade was to attack with three Battalions in the line and one Battalion in reserve as follows:-	
			The Royal Canadian Regiment on the right - 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C. in the centre - 49th Canadian Battalion, E. R. on the left and the P. P. C. L. I. in reserve. The frontage of the Battalion in the attack was 1,350 yards and its Objective was HILL. 102, the main feature of the country over which the Brigade was to attack (See DEMUIN Sheet att.)	
			There was to be no preliminary bombardment. The attack of the 9th Canadian inf. Brigade on the GREEN LINE was to be covered by a shrapnel barrage which ceased at Zero plus 4 hours, and there was to be no barrage forward of the GREEN LINE for the attack of the Brigade on the RED LINE. The advance of the 7th Cdn. Inf. Brigade on the RED LINE was to be covered, however, by heavy artillery fire on selected points and long range field guns firing H. E.	

D. D. & L., London, E.C.
(A1096) Wt W3300/P793 750,000 8/18 Sch. 52 Forms/C2118/5

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C. Sheet 4

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY~~.

(Erase heading not required.)

Army Form C. 2118.

Place 1918	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
AUGUST	7TH Cont.		One of the outstanding features of the Operation was the secrecy with which all operations and the assembly of troops and material were carried out. Not even the Commanding Officers of the Battalions in the front line knew that an attack was in preparation. All movements of transport, personnel, artillery, tanks, etc. were carried out by night and all these were hidden in the WOODS by daylight. Discussion of the Operations, even by and with those concerned in them was forbideen except where absolutely necessary. The presence of the Canadian Corps on this front was quite unknown to the enemy who had been purposely led to believe that all four Divisions of the Canadian Corps were on the YPRES front farther to the North.	
	8TH		Zero hour was 4.20 am. at which hour the 9th Cdn. Infantry Brigade jumped off for its attack on the GREEN LINE. 55, 56 and The Battalion left its first assembly position by cross-country tracks to Bridges 59 across the River LUCE which it commenced to cross at Zero + 100 minutes, namely 6 0' clock. The crossing of the River LUCE was considered from the outset to be one of the ticklish features of the Operation as all the troops taking part in the attack, in the 9th and 7th Canadian Infantry Brigades had to cross by foot bridges in the proximity of the AMIENS-ROYE Road, the main bridge being reserved for artillery, tanks, etc. Bridge 59 by which the Battalion crossed was approximately 200 yards long and crossed not only the river but also the wide strips of marsh land on each side. It had been damaged by shell fire at several points which necessitated the Battalion crawling along the remnants of the bridge at these places. Notwithstanding these difficulties the Battalion passed across the bridge successfully and without casualties. Shortly after crossing the bridge, however, the Battalion came under heavy shell fire in C. 4. c. & d. and suffered some casualties (See DEMUIN Sheet att.). The movements of the Battalion were considerably hampered and made difficult by the heavy mist which hung over everything at this time. However, the Battalion was able to reach the Second Assembly Position at C. 5. central (DEMUIN Sheet) in good time. After a short rest the Battalion pushed on to the valley in HAMON WOOD which it reached at 7.50 am. In the valley of HAMON WOOD the Battalion deployed and Companies got into their Battle positions at the jumping off point along the GREEN LINE extending from D. 13. a. 7.8. to D. 17. d. 2.5. While the Battalion was on the way to the jumping off position an enemy aeroplane	

D. D. & L., London, E.C.
(A1008) Wt W3500/P773 750,000 4/18 Sch. 52 Forms/C2118/1

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C. Sheet 5

Army Form C. 2118.

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.~~

(Erase heading not required.)

1918 Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
AUGUST	8TH Cont.		patrolled our line at a low altitude directing the enemy batteries. Although heavily shelled the Battalion sustained no casualties. None of our planes was in evidence at this time. The Battalion was to jump off from the GREEN LINE at 8.20am. which it did exactly on time. Very heavy machine gun fire was coming from the direction of HILL 102. In spite of this, however, the right Company was able to make progress. The centre and left Companies were held up by a battery of 4.1s. Howitzers which were fired at point blank range from the valley at D.7.d.. These were out-flanked and put out of action, and the crews either killed or captured by a very clever and daring operation which was carried out by the Adjutant of the Battalion - Capt. J. D. Macleod. Complete details of the manner in which this was carried out are shown in the report of the action attached. A little later the right flank - A Company, were held up by a battery of 8" guns firing at point blank range from the valley in L.13.d. These were rushed and the crews either killed or taken prisoners. Here 3-8" Howr guns, 1 Anti-Tank gun, and 4 G.S. Limbers were captured. After this valley in which guns had been located had been cleaned up the Battalion pressed on to the attack of HILL 102 itself. This attack was carried out with great dash and a few machine guns and some further prisoners were captured. The final objective at the RED LINE was reached at 10.20am. Throughout the last steps of the attack the right flank of the right company was more or less in the air owing to the fact that the Battalion on our right had not made as fast progress. When the objective was reached patrols were sent out and opposition was met with in CLAUDE WOOD, 3 Tanks came up and 2 enemy machine gun crews and a H.V. 4.5. c.m. were captured. The right flank of the right Company was still unprotected but outposts on the flank secured it until the Battalion on our right came up alongside. Battalion Headquarters was established on the North-Western corner of CLAUDE WOOD. Patrols were then sent forward to the high ground near ST. QUENTIN WOOD. At 11.am. two Brigades of cavalry went through us and the Hun, who a quarter of an hour before had been seen coming over the ridge South of PERONNE WOOD in artillery formation, was now seen retiring over the high ground. At 2.pm. the 4th Canadian Division went through the Battalion. Orders were received at 9.pm. to move into CLAUDE WOOD where the Battalion bivouaced for the night. In the meantime a Supply Tank came up on two occasions, the first time shortly after we reached our objective, and we were able to get 75 tins of water on each occasion and a large number of filled machine gun discs, S.A.A. etc. etc. Shortly after the objective was reached the G.O.C. Brigade came up to Battn.	

D. D. & L., London, E.C.
(A1098) Wt W3300/P783 750,000 4/18 Sch. 52 Forms/C2118/16

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C. Sheet 6

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY~~.

(Erase heading not required.)

Army Form C. 2118.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
1918 AUGUST	8TH CONT.		Headquarters in the Wood and the situation was such that we were able to have lunch in the open at which were present besides the Brigadier, the G.O.C. of the Cavalry Division which had gone through us, two aeroplane pilots, one of whose machines had crashed and the other who had made a landing near us and later left in his machine, and several Tank officers of the tanks which had taken part in the engagement. The G.O.C. Cavalry Division stated that the Canadians were the first Infantry troops through which his Division had gone into action at any time. About 9.30 that night the Battalion Transport and Details came up to CLAUDE WOOD and joined the Battalion.	
			The captures of the Battalion included: 3 8" Howitzers, 4 4.1 " Anti-Tank Gun, 1 H.V. 4.5 Gun, 1 Grenatenwerfer, 4 loaded G.S. Wagons, 8 horses, 2 Searchlights and many machine guns, and it was estimated 200 prisoners, also large quantities of ammunition and equipment.	
			Total casualties were:- KILLED / DIED OF WOUNDS / WOUNDED Officers: Lieut. E. C. Evans, " R. P. Crowe OTHER RANKS 12 2 29 TOTAL CASUALTIES - ALL RANKS 45	
			Copy of the Report on the Operations carried out on this date together with copies of messages and reports received and sent out during the Operation are attached.	
			The following message was received from Division through Brigade on the day following the Operations:-	
			"Would you please let your Command know that The Commander-in-Chief (Sir Douglas Haig) called at Divisional Headquarters this afternoon to congratulate the Division. He said that he especially wanted to congratulate our Division on account of the difficult tasks they had had to carry out and he desired me to convey his appreciation to all ranks."	
	9th		The Battalion rested in the morning in CLAUDE WOOD. In the afternoon the	

D. D. & L., London, E.C.
(A1906) Wt W3500/P713 750,000 4/18 Sch. 52 Forms/C2118/16

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY
42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C. Sheet 7
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(*Erase heading not required.*)

Army Form C. 2118.

Place 1918	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
AUGUST	9TH		Battalion moved to the area directly South - D.22.c.S.W. of BEAUCOURT-EN-SANTERRE (DEMUIN Sheet).	
			While the Battalion was resting in the fields in this area the 32nd. Division marched in and formed up as a Division quite close to the Battalion.	
			As soon as it got dark the Battalion moved by route march to FOLIES Village which had been captured that day by the 8th Cdn. Infantry Brigade (See Sheet 66 E. N. E. att) The Transport and Details remained in the field at D.22.c.	
	10TH.		Transport and Details moved up to FOLIES Village and joined the Battalion. In the evening an enemy aeroplane bombed the Battalion Lines and caused 15 casualties as follows:	
			KILLED WOUNDED OTHER RANKS .3 12	
	11th		At 8.15 pm. the Battalion moved off from FOLIES to the Assembly Area near the cross roads in K.24.b. (Sheet France 66 E. 1/20,000) and was disposed in old trenches while the Commanding Officer - Major R. L. H. Ewing, D.S.O., MC. left to attend a conference at Brigade Headquarters. This assembly area was shelled with a few rounds by an enemy Howitzer and the Battalion lost one man wounded.	
			Shortly before 11 pm. Major Ewing rejoined the Battalion and at a conference of Company Commanders, held in an old trench under a few sheets of corrugated iron, issued brief orders for the relief of the 1st/5th Battalion Border Regiment which was holding the line in the PARVILLERS Sector.	
			C Company was to take over the right and D Company the left of the front line, with A and B Companies in support. The actual location of the trenches we were to occupy was obscure at this time as the Border Regiment had suffered heavy casualties and had been unable to secure much information from the forward area. This, together with the fact that the Battalion had to march over three miles from the Assembly Area to the front line, entailed a considerable amount of difficulty in making the relief. Arrangements were made for guides from the Border Regiment to meet the Battalion at ROUVROY. Shortly before midnight the Battalion moved off along the main road to ROUVROY and were met at the edge of the village by the Commanding Officer of the 1st./5th Border Regiment and a party of guides who were told off to the respective companies. Some of the guides had but a hazy idea of where they	

D. D. & L., London, E.C.
(A.1008) Wt W3310/P793 750,000 4/18 Sch. 52 Forms/C2118/16

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R.H.G. Sheet 8

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY~~

(Erase heading not required.)

Army Form C. 2118.

Place 1918	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
AUGUST	11TH	Cont.	were to go and several false starts were made before the right routes to the front line were located. The enemy was shelling the village intermittently at this time with 8" guns and Major Ewing had a very narrow escape while on his way to Headquarters with the Commanding Officer of the 1st/5th Border Regiment. A shell exploded at the edge of the road, less than 15 feet from where he was walking. The Commanding Officer of the Border Regiment, who was beside him, had one arm blown away and was mortally wounded in the side. He was immediately attended by Captain Wm. Hale, M.C., Medical Officer of the 42nd. Cdn. Battalion, but died within an hour. Major Ewing, by a stroke of great good fortune, escaped unhurt.	
			The relief was reported complete at 4.25am. on August 12th.	
	12TH.		The Battalion had come into the line with instructions from Brigade to maintain a steady pressure against the enemy who was believed to be fighting a rearguard action, and immediately following completion of relief all information relating to the front was carefully considered. The line occupied by us was the old British front line held in this Sector before the German offensive, and consisted of a net work of old trenches overgrown with grass and weeds. The enemy occupied the old German system containing numerous concrete dugouts. It was heavily wired and we were informed by the Officers of the 32nd. Imperial Division which had been held up by it on the day before after suffering very severe casualties, that this was impenetrable. In between the two positions was a strip of No-mans-land which averaged from 150 to 300 yards wide. A frontal attack on this position entailed not only crossing our own wire which was quite strong but also the heavy enemy entanglements. The only weak point in the German defence lay on the North flank where our 4th Division had been able to push on through the village of ROUQUESCOURT. The Commanding Officer at once decided to capture PARVILLERS Trench System by a bombing attack from this flank. He dictated a brief Operation Order to the Adjutant and instructed Major C. B. Topp, M.C., Acting 2 i/c, to deliver copies to the Companies, make a reconnaissance of the position, and arrange any further necessary details for the attack. Meanwhile Major Ewing went to Brigade H. Q. to arrange for Artillery support and to explain the Operation to Brig. Gen. Dyer. He also wished to arrange for co-operation on the right of the ROUVROY-PARVILLERS Road by the P.P. CLI who were holding the line on the right of the Forty-Second. He was successful in arranging for this co-operation after which he returned to Battalion Headquarters.	
			The nature of the Operation called for a very large number of Bombs, and it was only with the greatest difficulty that they were secured and delivered to the	

D. D. & L., London, E.C.
(A1086) Wt W3300/P793 750,000 2/18 Sch. 52 Forms/C2118/16

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. Sheet 9

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY~~.

(*Erase heading not required.*)

Army Form C. 2118.

1918	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
AUGUST	12TH	Cont.	Companies in time to begin Operations at Zero hour which had been set for 3.30pm. A full report of the Operation which resulted in more than ten hours hand-to-hand fighting during which the attack was many times pressed home with the bayonet, and in which every officer and man engaged distinguished himself, is appended hereto.	
	13TH & 14TH		Aug. 13th. Lieut. S. H. Crawford reported and was posted to C Company.	
			Aug. 14th. Lieut. R. N. Munroe reported and was posted to D Company	
	15TH / 16TH		The Battalion was relieved by the sister Battalion - 13th Canadian Battalion, RHC. in the line and on relief moved to an orchard near the village of QUESNEL where the Battalion bivouaced for the night.	
			The total casualties for the tour were:- KILLED / WOUNDED / DIED OF WOUNDS	
			OFFICERS: Lt. H. L. Hoyles; " S. P. Earnshaw; Lieut. J. M. Morris, M.C.; " A. S. Scott; " J. R. LeMoine; " G. Morani; Capt. F. S. Allan	
			OTHER RANKS: 30 / 101 / 10	
	16TH		The Transport and Details joined the Battalion at QUESNEL.	
			The Battalion and Transport moved by route march from QUESNEL to HAMON WOOD where they bivouaced. During the stay in HAMON WOOD which lasted three days the Battalion was fortunate in the fact that the weather was splendid throughout as the whole Battalion and Transport were bivouaced in the open.	
			During the stay here the Battalion refitted, rested, and carried on Lewis Gun and General Training. Bathing Parades which took place to a large swimming pool in the River LUCE were much enjoyed.	
	18TH		The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade was inspected by the Premier of France - M. Clemenceau, The Field Marshal, Commander-in-chief - Sir Douglas Haig, K.T., G.C.B., G.C.V.O., K.C.I.E., The G.O.C. 4th Army - General Sir H. S. Rawlinson, Bart, G.C.V.O., K.C.B., K.C.M.G., and	

D. D. & L., London, E.C.
(A2946) Wt W3500/P773 750,000 4/18 Sch. 52 Forms/C2118/6

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C. Sheet 10

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY~~

(Erase heading not required.)

Army Form C. 2118.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
1918				
AUGUST	18TH	Cont.	the Divisional Commander - Major General L. J. Lipsett, C.B., C.M.G., accompanied by their respective staffs. This was the only Brigade in the Division which was inspected by these officers and it was felt that the Brigade had been singled out for this special honour in view of its outstanding work both on the 8th August and in the action about PARVILLERS.	
	19TH		The following message was received from Sir H. S. Rawlinson, G.O.C. 4th Army through Canadian Corps:- Fourth Army No. G.S. 2/7 To / Canadian Corps, I desire to place on record my sincere appreciation of the conspicuous and highly successful part played by the Canadian Corps in the battle of August 8th. The task allotted to them was not easy, especially on the right where the initial attack of the 3rd. Canadian Division was delivered under special difficulties. The need for secrecy, which necessitated the assembly of the whole Corps, including the heavy artillery, by night in an area previously unknown to them, enhanced the difficulties, especially when the front line had of necessity to be held by other troops. The determination with with all obstacles were overcome, the dash and gallantry with which the assault was delivered, and the precision with which each advance was made exactly on scheduled time, reflect the highest credit both on the staff arrangements and the fine fighting spirit of all units which took part in the operation. The three points which seem to me to deserve the highest commendation are the splendid gallantry of the infantry, the skill and hard work in "getting in" the artillery (both heavy artillery and field artillery) on the nights preceding the battle, and the energy and drive in pushing forward mobile artillery immediately the enemy front line had been broken. The general control and direction of the battle by Corps, Divisional and Brigade Staffs were admirable and enabled the whole programme to be carried through in its entirity without a hitch; this is in itself the highest praise	

D. D. & L., London, E.C.
(A7008) Wt W3500/P793 750,000 4/18 Sch. 52 Forms/C2118/6

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C. Sheet 11

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.~~

(Erase heading not required.)

Army Form C. 2118.

Place 1918	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
AUGUST	19th	Cont.	that can be given. I congratulate the Canadian Corps as a whole and offer them my warmest thanks for their very fine performance. (Signed) H. RAWLINSON, General Cmdg. 4th Army H. Q. Fourth Army 16th August, 1918. Announcement appeared in Orders of the award to Lieut. J. M. Morris (since wounded) of the Military Cross for the part he had played in the patrol and raid of July 17th/18th and 19th/20th respectively. The following officer reinforcements reported and were posted to Companies as shown:- Lieut. B. C. Hutchison to A Company; Lieut. H. A. Seely, to A "; Lieut. C. L. Smart to A "; Lieut. R. C. Dobell to B Company; " G. S. Ryder to C "; " A. B. Burke to C "; " C. N. Ramsey to D " The Brigade was ordered to move to BOVES Station for entrainment. The Battalion less Transport moved off at 9. pm. and proceeded by route march to BOVES Station which they reached about 11.30pm. The Transport, after moving some of the baggage down to the Station, moved by route march to RIVERY Area near AMIENS.	
	20TH		After a very long wait on the road side entrainment commenced at about 4 am. Entrainment was unusually slow as the platform was covered with broken stone and the Battalion had to move in single file entraining taking place in successive cars and not simultaneously in each car. The Battalion detrained at BOURQUEMAISON at 8.30 am. and proceeded by route march to IVERGNY, where it moved into billets. In the evening a very enjoyable concert was given by the 16th Cdn. Bn. Concert Party at the Y.M.C.A. Hut of the Canadian Forestry Corps in LUCHEUX WOOD - 200 of the Battalion attended.	
	21ST.		The Battalion remained at IVERGNY doing training and refitting in so far as possible.	

D. D. & L., London, E.C.
(A1008) Wt W3300/P793 750,000 4/18 Sch. 52 Forms/C2118/16

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C. Sheet 12

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY~~.

(Erase heading not required.)

Army Form C. 2118.

Place 1918	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
AUGUST	22ND/23RD		The Battalion remained at IVERGNY all day and at 8.45 pm. received orders to move crossing the Starting Point, about one and a half miles distant, at 9.30pm. The Battalion accordingly fell in at 9.10pm., the Transport was loaded, and the Battalion moved off, the destination being MANIN, a distance of 16 kilometres. The night was very hot but a bright moon made marching easier than it would have been without it. The Battalion arrived at MANIN at 4. am. and moved into excellent billets. All ranks immediately went to rest and in the afternoon, shortly after waking, orders were received that the Battalion would move to the PENIN ANZIN ST. AUBIN Area, the destination of the Battalion being "Y" Camp near DUISANS. The Battalion left at 8.15 pm.	
	24TH		The Battalion arrived at "Y" Camp about 1.30am. and were billetted in huts. The transport which had accompanied the Battalion on the marches from IVERGNY and MANIN, was parked in the Camp.	
	25TH.		Battalion still at "Y" Camp. Under instructions from Brigade the Commanding Officer and Company Commanders left Camp at 10. am. to reconnoitre the trenches East of ARRAS, from which it was expected that an attack would shortly take place. At 2.30pm. a conference was held at Brigade H. Q. and Brig. General H.M. Dyer, CMG., DSO. issued verbal instructions to the Battalion Commanders for the Operations which were to take place at 3. am. on the following morning. The task allotted to the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade was to attack through the 8th Cdn. Inf. Brigade after it had made good a line just West of MONCHY LEPREUX and to capture MONCHY - BOIS DE VERT - BOIS DU SART and JIGSAW WOOD. The Royal Canadian Regiment - The P.P. C.L.I. and 49th Canadian Battalion, E.R. were to attack and the 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. was to remain in Brigade reserve, moving forward 800 yards in rear of the Royal Canadian Regiment who were attacking on the right. The whole Brigade was ordered to move independently after dusk to the first Assembly Position, astride the ARRAS-CAMBRAI Road just East of ARRAS. The Battalion moved off at 8. pm. along the main road to ARRAS, and arrived there during a heavy thunder storm about 11. pm. - A Company occupied BLANGY Trench at the Eastern outskirts of the town and B. C. and D Companies were billetted in cellars where they settled down to rest until Zero hour. The Commanding Officer reported to Brigade H. Q. at	

D. D. & L., London, E.C.
(A.1448) Wt W3300/P793 750,000 8/18 Sch. 52 Forms/C2118/16

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C. Sheet 13

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.~~

(Erase heading not required.)

Army Form C. 2118.

Place 1918	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
AUGUST	25TH		CHATHAM Cave to receive orders for the advance and the Company Commanders assembled at Battalion H. Q.	
	26TH		At 2.45am. the Battalion stood to under cover and promptly at 3. the barrage opened up and the attack began. Orders to move were momentarily expected and all ranks stood ready with their equipment on. It was not until 6.45am, however, that Major Ewing returned with instructions to move off at once to the second Assembly Position which lay in the low ground North of the CAMBRAI Road and West of ORANGE Hill.. The Companies were ordered to move off independently via PELVES Road and by 7. am. the Battalion was under way. The roads were crowded with troops and transport moving up, our own and German wounded coming down and many parties of prisoners were passed. There was little shelling of the roads and the Battalion reached the Assembly Area at 8.40am. without casualties. The advance from this position began shortly after 10. am. but the Royal Canadian Regiment's attacking companies were held up just East of MONCHY and consequently the 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C. was unable to move further ahead than the Area immediately West of MONCHY. We remained here until 4.30pm. during which time a heavy concentration of artillery was placed on the Area and several men were lost. At 4.30pm. the Battalion began a bombing attack of the enemy trench system between MONCHY and the CAMBRAI Road. A full report of the Operation, which in its later stages resulted in very heavy fighting, is appended hereto.	
	27TH		At 5. am. the 9th Cdn. Infantry Brigade attacked through the Battalion and we remained in Support where we were. There was considerable shelling of the area and a few casualties occurred. At 10. am. orders were received that the Battalion would be prepared to relieve the 52nd. Canadian Battalion and reconnaissance was made. At 9.30pm. verbal instructions were received from Brigade to relieve the 58th Canadian Battalion and one Company of the 49th Canadian Battalion, E. R. in the neighbourhood of the BOIS DU SART which had been captured during the afternoon and to touch up with the P.P. C.L.I. on the left flank. As this meant relief by night over unknown country for a distance of over 4,000 yards which had not been previously reconnoitred by us or even seen in daylight, it entailed many difficulties. The Commanding Officer, Adjutant, Scout Officer, and a party of Scouts and Runners left immediately for the 58th Battalion H. Q.	

D. D. & L., London, E.C.
(A1006) Wt W3300/P773 750,000 8/18 Sch. 52 Forms/C2118/16

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. Sheet 14

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY~~.

(Erase heading not required.)

Army Form C. 2118.

1918 Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
AUGUST	28TH		The party arrived at the 58th Battalion Headquarters at 1 am. and arrangements were made for guides. Word was sent back to the Battalion and the move commenced at 2.20am. After a great deal of difficulty the relief was finally completed at 5.10am. The area taken over was a narrow salient encircling the BOIS DU SART, and was about 500 yards in front of the Battalions on either flank. About 10. am. verbal instructions were received advising us that PELVES had been captured and that a further attack would be launched at 11 am. The 9th Canadian Infantry Brigade on our right were to capture BOIRY and ARTILLERY HILL and the P.P.C.L.I. on our left were to attack and capture JIGSAW WOOD. This meant that the troops on our flanks were to move forward and capture a line slightly in advance of the nose of the salient we were holding. The 42nd. Canadian Battalion were ordered to conform with the flanks. It turned out that stronger opposition was encountered than was expected and before it was over the Battalion had become envolved in a heavy attack during which the South-East part of JIGSAW WOOD and a portion of BOIRY Trench were captured by us. A complete report of the Operation is appended hereto.	
			Lieut. A. Wilson, who had been in charge of the 42nd Bn. Training Platoon, 7th Canadian Inf. Brigade Training Company, 3rd. Divisional Wing, C.C.R.C. for about three months, returned to the Battalion.	
			145373 C.S.M. Lush, J.T. "B" Coy. - 418995 Sgt. Brown, J.S. "A" Coy. - 441875 Sgt. Wilson, R.L. "Scout Section H.Q." - 418164 Cpl. Hocking, E.L. "D" Coy. and 2075447 A/Cpl. Dinesen, T. "D" Coy. all of whom had rendered excellent service both in the ranks and as N.C.Os. left the Battalion to report to England for a Cadet Course.	
			Lieut. D. B. Gilmour was evacuated sick to hospital.	
	28th /29TH		The Battalion was relieved by Composite Machine Gun Battalion and upon relief which was completed only at daybreak moved to billets in ARRAS which were reached between 9. and 10. in the morning.	
			The following message was received and published in Orders:-	

D. D. & L., London, E.C.
(A1066) Wt W3500/P793 750,000 1/18 Sch. 52 Forms/C2118/16

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C. Sheet 15

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.~~

(Erase heading not required.)

Army Form C. 2118.

Place 1918	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
AUGUST	28th/29th Cont.		FROM / Field Marshall H. R. H. the Duke of Connaught and Strathearn, K. G., K. T., K. P., G. C. B., G. C. S. I., G. C. M. G., G. C. I. E., G. C. I. E., G. B. E. "My warmest congratulations on splendid part taken by Canadians in great and successful Anglo-French advance. Deeply sympathise with Royal Highlanders at loss of their gallant and capable Commanding Officer."	
	29TH		Lieut. D. M. Handy reported as a reinforcement and was posted to D Company.	
	30TH		Lieut. H. A. Sewell, Battn. Scout Officer, left to take charge of the 42nd. Bn. Training Platoon, 3rd. Divisional Wing, C. C. R. C. 132255 Sgt. Crawford, D. A Coy. left to report to England for a Cadet Course. This Sergeant had been Actg. C. Q. M. S. of A Company, and both in this capacity and as Sergeant had rendered excellent service. The following message from the G.O.C., Division, was received:- To / 7th C.I. Brigade, 3rd. Cdn. Division A. 49-110 Since the 26th August the Division has advanced some 9,000 yards on a front of about 3,000 yards gradually increasing to 7,000 yards through a strongly defended German System. The important and historic places of MONCHY - PELVES - BOIS DU VERT - BOIS du SART - JIGSAW WOOD - BOIRY NOTRE DAME, have all been captured. Five German Lines of Defence have been crossed. The booty and prisoners captured are as follows:- About 200 Machine Guns 22 Guns 15 Trench Mortars Large quantities of other stores 1,424 unwounded prisoners About 211 wounded prisoners	

D. D. & L., London, E.C.
(A1066) Wt W3200/P793 720,000 8/18 Sch. 52 Forms/C2118/16

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C. Sheet 16

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY~~.

(Erase heading not required.)

Army Form C. 2118.

Place 1918	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
AUGUST	30TH		our casualties are about 2,400. The whole operation in my opinion was carried out with great skill and courage on the part of Officers, N.C.Os. and men. I particularly want to thank all ranks for their final effort on 28th August. After the men had been continuously fighting and marching for three days they made a final effort which broke the FRESNE - ROUVROY Line, and captured Artillery Hill and BOIRY. Every Battalion in the Division was engaged in this final attack and I think it gave one of the finest examples possible of what can be accomplished by determined men in spite of fatigue and losses. (Sd.) L. J. Lipsett, Major General Cmdg. 3rd. Canadian Division 3rd. Canadian Division 30.8.18.	
	31st		In the afternoon word was received that the Battalion would probably move on this date to ST. AUBIN about 3½ miles to the North-West. About 6 pm. however, this order was cancelled and the month closed with the Battalion resting in billets in ARRAS.	

Total casualties during the month were:-

	KILLED	DIED OF WOUNDS	WOUNDED	TOTAL
OFFICERS	3	-	12	15
OTHER RANKS	60	12	225	297
TOTAL	63	12	237	312

Major,
Cmdg. 42nd. Canadian Battn. R. H. C.

D. D. & L., London, E.C.
(A1006) Wt W3300/P793 750,000 2/18 Sch. 52 Forms/C2118/16

SECRET

Operation Order No.202 by COPY NO. 10
Lieut.Col. B. McLennan.DSO
Cmdg. 42nd. Canadian Battalion.RHC.

Ref.Map
AMIENS 1/100,000

FRIDAY, AUGUST 2nd 1918

1
INFORMATION

The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade will move from the HEBECOURT Area to the S T.FUSCIEN Area on the night 2/3rd August.

2
INTENTION

The 42nd. Canadian Battalion,R.H.C. will move by Route March from DURY to billets in ST.FUSCIEN.

3.
PARADE

The Battalion will fall in, in column of route, facing North, on the main HEBECOURT-AMIENS Road, with head of column at the SALEUX-FUSCIEN Cross Roads, ready to move off at 9.45 pm.

4
ORDER OF MARCH

Headquarters - A - B - C - D Companies

5
DRESS

Heavy Marching Order

6
BILLETS

Billets will be cleaned, ready for inspection, by 8.30 pm.

J.D. MACLEOD,

Captain/Adjutant

Issued at 2. pm.

Copies to 1 H.Q. 7th C.I.Bde
2 C.O.
3 H.Q. Mess
4 5 6 O.Cs. A.B.C. Coys
7 Q.M.
8 RSM
9.10. 11 War Diary
12 File
13 O.C. D Co.

Appendix "O"

SECRET

TO/ O.C. Adjt. O.C. A B C D Coys. August 6th 1918
RHM War Diary File

Reference Map AMIENS 17 1/100,000

Reference Battalion Operation Order No.203

STARTING POINT Road Junction under "U" in ST.FUSCIEN

ROUTE ST.FUSCIEN - 2nd. Class road to forked road 3/3 of a mile North of"S" in BOVES, across AVRE by Bridge 3/4 ~~mile~~ of a mile North of"S" in BOVES thence by Platoons by most direct overland route.

TIME Head of column will pass Starting Point at 9.30pm instead of 10.30pm.

PARADE will be at 9.15pm instead of 10.15pm.

C B Howard
Captain
Captain/Adjutant

W.D

OPERATION ORDER No. 203 SECRET

by

Major R. L. H. Ewing, DSO, MC. COPY No 5

TUESDAY AUGUST 6TH, 1918

1
INFORMATION The 7th C.I.Bde. will move from SALEUX Area to the Forward Area on the night 6th/7th August, and will be accomodated in BOIS DE GENTELLES until YZ Night.

2
INTENTION The 42nd.Cdn.Battalion,R.H.C. will move from ST.FUSCIEN to BOIS DE GENTELLES on the night 6th/7th AUGUST.

3
STARTING POINT will be notified later

4
ROUTE will be notified later.

5
ORDER OF MARCH HQ - A - B - C - D Coys.

6
TIME Head of column will pass Starting Point at 10.30 pm.

7
PARADE H.Q. and Companies will fall in in front of billets , ready to move off, at 10.15 pm.

8
DRESS Battle Order - Greatcoats will be carried on the men.

9
MARCH DISCIPLINE 200 yards between Companies will be maintained on the march as far as the river AVRE, from this point Units will proceed by pl atoons by the most direct overland route.

10
PIPERS Pipers will report to their Companies and H.Q. by 10.15 pm. but will not play beyond BOVES.

Issued at_____

C. G. HEWARD,
Lieut.Asst.Adjt.
for Capt.Adjt.

Copies to 1 O.C.
2 Adjt.
3.4.5.6. O.Cs.A B C D Coys.
7. T.O.
8.9.10 War Diary
11 File

W.D

SECRET

To recipients Instructions re offensive No.1

6th August 1918.

Reference instructions already issued covering offensive operation No.1.

One Stokes Gun with crew and pack animal will be attached to each of A and C Companies and will operate as near as possible to the inner flank of each Company.

Lieut.Asst.Adjt.
for Capt.Adjt.

17th August 1918.

Reference HEMUIN Sheet 1/20,000

Report on operations carried out by the 42nd Canadian Battalion, R. H.C. on the 8th August 1918 at HILL 102.

The 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. left the assembly area GENTELLES TRENCH at 4.50 am. on the morning of the 8th and proceeded along overland route on the northern side of the AMIENS-ROYE ROAD to the LUCE RIVER which was crossed by 6.30 am. A great deal of difficulty was experienced in finding routes and maintaining direction in the Valley of the LUCE on account of the dense fog and smoke which filled the valley. The routes were also heavily shelled by enemy artillery and we had several casualties. The assembly area in the vicinity of HEIDELBERG TRENCH at about C.5. central was reached at 7.20 am. and the Valley in HAMON WOOD at 7.50 am. On the way-up to the GREEN LINE on the high ground in L.12.a. I was met by Lieut. Col. Perks, W.C. of the 116th. Battalion who informed me that the situation on the left was obscure and that heavy Machine Gun fire was coming from the direction of HILL 102. An enemy aeroplane was also patrolling our lines at a low altitude and directing battery fire on the Battalion, and although fairly heavily shelled we sustained no casualties.

From the valley of HAMON WOOD the Battalion deployed and Companies got into their battle positions on the jumping off point along the GREEN LINE extending from D.13.a.7.8. to D.1.d.2.5. The attack was made with three companies, A on the right, B in the centre, C on the left, while D was held in reserve.

At 8.20 am. the Battalion jumped off and notwithstanding very heavy Machine Gun fire from the direction of Hill 102 the right Company was able to make progress, but the centre and left Companies were held up by a battery of 4.1" Howitzers which were firing at point blank range from the valley In D.7.d. We got into touch with a tank that was operating on the extreme left flank and advised the officer in charge of the situation. At the same time two platoons of the centre Company worked their way round the right flank until they got in rear of the battery when they opened up with Lewis Guns at 100 yards range. The crews immediately surrendered and about 20 tried to get away. These were all wounded or killed, the remainder of the crews numbering about 40 were taken prisoners and the guns captured. A little later on the right flank A Company were held up by a battery of 8 in. Guns firing at point blank range from the valley in L.13.d. Working up to within a short distance the guns were rushed and the crews either killed or taken prisoners. Here 3 8 in. guns, 1 anti tank gun and 4 G.S. limbers with horses were captured.

After this valley was cleaned up and batteries captured the Battalion pressed on over Hill 102, cleaning up a few Machine Guns and taking some prisoners. The final objective on the RED LINE was reached at 10.20 am. Patrols were sent forward across the whole front and opposition was met with in CLAUDE WOOD. Three tanks came to our

P.T.O.

Sheet No.2

assistance and two Machine Gun crews and a high velocity 4.5 cm. gun were captured. The Battalion H.Q. was established on the North Western corner of CLAUDE WOOD. Patrols were then sent forward to the high ground near ST QUENTIN WOOD and about 10.45 am. the enemy were seen coming over the ridge, south of PERONNE WOOD in artillery formation and were lost sight of in the valley. About 11 am. two brigades of cavalry went through us and the Hun was seen retiring over the high ground at 11.05 am. There was still a considerable amount of Machine Gun fire coming from the direction of BEAUCOURT-EN-SANTERRE. At 11.22 am. two more brigades of cavalry went through and shortly after the Machine Gun fire from the direction of BEAUCOURT had ceased. About 3 pm. the 4th Canadian Division started to go through us and at 9 pm. we had orders to move into CLAUDE WOOD where we bivouaced for the night.

I cannot speak too highly of the work of the tanks. They never ceased patrolling the front and whenever any resistence was encountered they immediately came to our aid. They were largely responsible for the success of the whole operation and for our comparatively slight casualties. The supply tanks also gave absoluto satisfaction.

Our captures included -

3 8 in. Howitzers
4 4.1 in. Howitzers
1 Anti Tank Gun
1 H.V. 4.5. in.Gun.
1 Grenatenwerfer Gun
4 Loaded G.S. waggons.
8 Horses
2 Search lights
Many Machine Guns
Estimated 200 prisoners
Large quantities of ammunition and equipment

Total casualties all ranks forty two.

Copies of reports received and sent out during the operation are attached.

Major
Comdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.

2

18th August 1918.

Report on operations carried out by the 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. on the PARVILLERS SECTOR on the 12th, 13th., 14th., and 15th of August 1918.

On the night of the 11th/12th August the 42nd. Canadian Battalion relieved the 1st/6th Borderers in the old British Front line, PARVILLERS SECTOR, taking over the area between the ROUVROY-PARVILLERS and the ROUVROY-FOUQUESCOURT roads. The advance had been held up at this point owing to the very heavy wire which separated the old British andGerman front lines. Officers of the 1st/6th Borderers stated that this wire was impenetrable and this statement was borne out by reconnaissances made by our forward companies later. I accordingly got in touch with the O.C. 44th. Canadian Battalion who was established in the town of FOUQUESCOURT and found that an entrance could be made into the old German system of trenches from this northern flank. I accordingly prepared plans and ordered A and D Companies to capture PARVILLERS by a bombing attack from FOUQUES-COURT with B and C Companies in support. The first objective was the ROUVROY-PARVILLERS Road from old German front line at L.28.b.[illegible] to L.23.c.60.20 and the second objective to mop up the town of PARVILLERS.

About 10 o'clock on the morning of the 12th the two attacking companies commenced to filter through to FOUQUESCOURT following a route along the northern side of the ROUVROY-FOUQUESCOURT Road where there was a certain amount of natural cover. This movement was made by sending men over in pairs at good intervals which was unnoticed by the enemy and it was not until the attack was well under way that they laid down a barrage on this approach. Both attacking Companies were in assembly positions at FOUQUESCOURT by 3 pm. A Company under Capt. Trout was ordered to clear out and occupy the enemy's front and support lines and D Company under Capt. Grafftey to clear and occupy the trench system running from L.18.a.90.90 to the ROUVROY-PARVILLERS Road at approximately L.23.c.50.20.

At 3.30 pm. (zero hour) the enemy's trenches were entered simultaneously by all parties. Although taken by surprise the enemy fought stubbornly but the garrison consisting chiefly of Machine Gunners was unable to check the combination of our Lewis Gunners, Bombers, Rifle Grenadiers and Bayonet men. Lt. J.D.Leloine was wounded by a Machine Gun bullet early in the engagement and Pte. Ritchie speedily put the gun and crew out of action by a direct hit with a Mills Grenade. In the support trench Lt. Andrews with No.4 platoon was advancing with great dash and the work of his first bayonet man Pte. Trowse was outstanding. After hard fighting throughout the whole length of the trenches the ROUVROY-PARVILLERS Road was reached about 5.30 pm. Heavy casualties were inflicted on the enemy. Many dead were left in the trenches and numerous Machine Guns were captured. One Alsatian prisoner assisted the right company by going along the enemy trench to the objective and

during consolidation helped to repair and put into action a hostile Machine Gun.

Almost immediately the enemy began to counter attack advancing on two sides and endeavouring to cut off our advanced platoons by working his way in from the rear. His Machine Gun fire was extremely heavy and bombs were freely used. When the enemy were observed advancing L/Cpl. Howes and Pte. Legallais on their own initiative took their Lewis Gunx sections across the road and advanced some 50 yards to meet the enemy and opened fire. Both guns were kept in action and inflicted heavy casualties until these two O.R. were killed. The crews then returned to the north of the road, bringing their guns with them.

After the signal had been sent up to indicate that the objective was reached C Company under Lieut. Hoyles and B Company under Lt. Scott proceeded to cross no man's land to occupy the enemy's old front line. The Machine Gun fire was very heavy and B Company suffered about 30 casualties. On arrival in the old German front line Nos. 10 and 11 platoons proceeded up the communication trench and attacked the enemy's support lines. By this time the enemy had brought into action a Light Trench Mortar that was enfilading this communication trench and we suffered casualties. At the same time the enemy who had retired from his positions on the west of the road commenced to fight his way back and succeeded in bringing up some Light Machine Guns which enfiladed the trench. By a strong bombing attack supported by Lewis Gun fire he was again forced to withdraw. A Company's flank was again being threatened by a second counter attack from the enemy and Nos. 9 and 12 platoons under Lt. Craig and Marani were sent forward to reinforce this part of the line. Lt. Hoyles was killed on making a daring reconnaissance into the enemy's reserve lines.

About 8 o'clock Lt. MacLachlan with a party of about 2 platoons worked his way up the communication trench and succeeded in clearing out the German Support Trench which was still occupied by the enemy, and got in touch with A on the right and B on the left, thus establishing a continuous line along the old German support trench.

About midnight two Companies of the 49th Battalion were sent up as reinforcements.

While A Company were clearing out the front support trenches D Company commenced to bomb down the trenches running from L.16.a.90.90 to L.17.b.62.65 No.13 platoon under Lt. A. Scott supported by No.14 and 15 under Lt. Morris started from L.16.a.90.90 and No.16 platoon under Capt. Grafftey from L.17.b.62.65 No.13 platoon lost its direction and fought his way down Pelican Alley to approximately

Sheet No.3

G.14.a.20.25. The O.C. 44th. Bn. who was watching the operations seeing that direction had been lost detailed Major D.B.Martyn, M.C. 2 i/c. 44th. Canadian Battalion to take as many men as necessary and assist the 42nd Battalion to gain their direction. Major Martyn got in touch with Lt. Scott and the attack ~~xxxxxxxx~~ ~~xxxxx~~ recommenced in the direction of PARVILLIERS. In the attack on Pelican Alley Lt. Scott was wounded and shortly afterwards when the attack went towards PARVILLIERS Lt. Morris was wounded. Lt. Scott was hit four times in rushing a block where he killed one of the blocking party. As the party was without an officer to direct them Major Martyn took charge and continued the attack with one platoon of the 44th. Battalion under Lieut. Collie to follow up in support. Strong resistence was encountered and all enemy posts and blocks fought with determination and in many cases the attack was pressed home with the bayonet. The fight proceeded with such dash that few Germans succeeded in getting away and we captured two heavy and 6 light Machine Guns and recaptured one hotchkiss gun which the enemy had put into action. Owing to no trench existing between L.18.c.40.80 and L.18.c.15.05 he went around via trench at L.17.d.80.60 and then took trench which led him inside the CHAVATTE salient. While at G.18.c.60.80 he withstood enemy counter attacks of approximately 150 from the direction of SCHWETZ wood - our Lewis Gunners doing excellent work. After holding a position inside the CHAVATTE salient for one hour Capt. Allan who had been sent for arrived and informed Major Martyn he had taken the wrong trench and Major Martyn then withdrew and occupied the trenches running from L.17.d.10.05 to L.17.d.80.05 along C.T. to L.18.a.55.00 and connected up with the 44th Battalion on the left. No.16 platoon proceeded along trench to L.23.a.60.70 and owing to enemy resistence were unable to proceed.- A block was put in the trench here and D Company formed connection with A Company.

On the morning of August 13th. we cleared the trench running from L.23.a.60.50 to L.23.a.60.75 to L.17.a.30.00. During this operation Lieut. Earnshaw was killed.- That evening the 42th. Battalion cleared the trench running from L.23.a.60.75 to BLUCHER Wood. On the morning of the 14th. one platoon of A Company and three platoons of C Company under Lieut. MacLachlan relieved the 42th Battalion in this trench. On the morning of the 15th we occupied the line running from L.23.c.05.85 to L.24.a.00.00 to L.17.d.00.00 to L.18.c.45.35 to the railway at L.12.a.85.35. While a restribution of the garrison was taking place a hostile bombing party attempted to occupy the trench junction at L.23.c.05.85 Lt. MacLachlan with 8 O.Rs. of the 42th Battalion supported by Lt. Crawford and 15 O.Rs. of the 42nd Battalion succeeded in driving the enemy off. No further enemy counter attacks were attempted

Sheet No.4

The Battalion was relieved by the 13th Battalion, R.H.C. on the night 15th/16th.

Our captures included -

About 60 prisoners
18 Machine Guns
2 Hotchkiss Guns
Total casualties O.Rs. 135.

Major,
Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.

Wire Capt. Adjt. 42nd Cdn. Bn. to 7th Cdn. Inf. Bde.
dated 8th Aug. 1918 timed 7.50 am.

42nd Bn. in assembly position on GREEN LINE AAA VERy heavy M.G. Fire from Hill 102 AAA No tanks AAA Enemy aeroplane patrolling our line and directing artillery fire AAA None of ours in sight.

C.O. 42nd Cdn. Bn. to O.C. 49th Cdn. Bn. dated 8th Aug. 1918.
timed 7.55 am.

Weare assembled just back GREEN LINE D.7.a. over brow of Hill ready to push off at our zero. Understand that situation in front of your right flank is obscure.

Major Topp, C.B., M.C. to 42nd Bn. dated 8.8.18 timed 9.10 am.

Am well over Hill 102 with A Company No one up on left or right flanks as far as we can see. Tank and some infantry are pushing up in right rear of us along main ROYE ROAD. We captured battery of 5.9s, 1 M.G. and 4 G.S. wagons with teams. Several prisoners sent back. A Coy. pushing on. I am taking one platoon across left flank to try and get in touch with 49th Bn.

Capt. Adjt. 42nd Bn. to 7th Cdn. Inf. Bde. d. 8th Aug. 1918.
timed 10.30 pm.

On final objective RED LINE at 10.20 am AAA Are going into outposts and sending patrols through CLAUDE WOOD AAA Are in touch on the left with the 49th AAA No communication with right flank yet AAA Sending a patrol over on the flank AAA Casualties slight AAA Captured an entire battery crew that were firing at our centre company point blank AAA Known guns captured 10 AAA 4 tanks with us at final objective AAA Enemy entirely demoralised AAA Sent back large number of of prisoners majority wounded AAA Bn. H.Q. with front line at approximately D.9.d.6.2. AAA Will ad ise permanent H.Q. later.

Lieut. Molson (B Coy) to C.O. 42nd Cdn. Bn. dated 8.8.18
timed 10.25 am.

Patrol of No.7 platoon worked through CLAUDE WOOD and found no enemy. Then in an easterly direction to approx. the edge of the woods south of BEAUCOURT - EN - SANTERRE enemy Machine Guns firing point blank. Two tanks are attacking woods.

Capt. Adjt. 42nd Cdb. Bn. to 7th Cdn. Inf. Bde. dated 8.8.18 timed
11.15 am.

Have sent patrol through to high ground near ST QUENTIN WOOD AAA Situation on right still uncertain at 10.45 am. AAA Enemy seen coming over high ground in D.11.a. South of PERONNE WOOD in artillery formation AAA Estimated strength one Bn. AAA 2 Brigades of cavalry with whippets went through us and Hun seen retiring on the double over the high ground at 11.05 am. Still some M.G. fire from right flank AAA Situation now well in hand.

Lt. Scott to C.O. 42nd Cdn. Bn. D.8.8.18. timed 11.15 am.

We are holding RED LINE from approx. D.10.c.05.40 to approx. D.15.a.95.50. 2 platoons in front Line 2 in close support. Patrol report herewith. In touch with C Coy. on left and A Coy. about 200 yards in front and to right of us.

Lieut. Marani to C.O. 42nd Cdn. Bn. d. 8.8.18 timed 11.20 am.

Our position at present roughly D.10.d.7.6. Movement of small parties seen on road approx. D.18.c.3.3. moving towards us into Valley. Large parties of men seen returning to BEAUCOURT along the main road. Approx. 12 riders seen going down far slope of hill at approx. D.18.a.3.6. Have fired at snipers along hedge at D.18.b.9.6. Men in extended order just seen crossing road between D.12.c.3.4. and D. 18.c.8.7. moving into valley in front of us. Looks very much as if he expected to counter attack from valley in front of us. Cannot get near enough to the valley to see on account of Machine Gun on right flank firing at us.

Capt. Adjt. 42nd Cdn. Bn. to 7th Cdn. Inf. Bde. d. 8.8.18. timed 11.22 am.

Two more brigades of cavalry going through at 11.22 am.

Capt. Adjt. 42nd Cdn. Bn. to 7th Cdn. Inf. Bde. dated 8.8.18 timed 9.30 pm.

Battalion in CLAUDE WOOD AAA Bn. H.Q. at D. 10.c.1.7.

3

14.8.18.

Reference Map 66.a. and 66.d.

Report on operation by 42nd Canadian Battalion supported by 44th Bn. between FOQUESCOURT and PARVILLERS on afternoon of August 12th.1918.

At 4 pm. on the 12th inst. while with O.C. 44th. Bn. watching operation of 42nd. Bn. we noticed that direction had been lost and flares indicated that the attack had reached G.14.a.20.95. I was detailed by O.C. 44th Bn. to take as many men as necessary and assist the 42nd Bn. and to get the troops in the right direction.

I got in touch with the officer in charge and the attack recommenced in the direction of PARVILLERS In the attack on PELICAN ALLEY one officer of the 42nd was wounded and shortly afterwards, when the attack went towards PARVILLERS the other officer was hit four times in rushing a block where he killed one of the blocking party This was at L.18.a.75.40. As the company were without an officer to direct then I took charge and continued the attack.

I had one platoon, 44th Bn., under Lieut. A Collie follow in support.

Strong resistance was encountered and all enemy posts and blocks fought with determination. In some cases the attack was pressed home with the bayonet. The dash displayed by the 42nd Bn. carried the fight so quickly that few Boche succeeded in getting away, and we succeeded in capturing 2 heavy and 5 Light Machine Guns and one hotchkiss gun which the enemy was using, and also a number of prisoners - about 40 in all.

Attack. The attack was principally down trench from L.18.a.90.75 - its object was to get in behind PARVILLERS.

We reached a point at approximately L.13b.10.10 and put in a block under Pte. O.G.Swire, 44th Bn.

I then led the partyup trench from L.23.b.52.70 towards LA CHAVATTE, as most heavy fire resistence was coming from this direction. We reached a point at approximately G.19.b.40.60 within the CHAVATTE Salient. Great commotion was occasioned among the enemy by our appearance and we succeeded in getting about 50 up against a hedge between this point and LA CHAVATTE and mowed them down at 75 yards range. Several enemy Machine Guns tried to get into action behind the hedge, but could not maintain fire for any time against our Lewis Guns.

I put up a triple green flare here to show our position and we maintained ourselves there for one hour. While occupying this position we engaged two excellent enemy targets in the open, where he at one time came on in several waves between us and SCHWETZ WOOD, attacking towards BLUE HOUSE so that he came under enfilade fire from all our Lewis Guns and rifles. We broke him up completely and he hunted cover, odd men running

Sheet No.2.

away in disorder.

About 6.30 pm. a message came to me that our block in L.23 b. was hard pressed, could not hold out and were retiring on the trench junction.

I took two section and reinforced and we succeeded in fighting back the Boshe clear of the trench junction at L.23.b.58.70.

The enemy brought into action at this time a light minenwerfer firing direct fire from L.23.c.95.30.

The enemy succeeded in getting into the trenches in L. 17.d. in large numbers and so as no one else of the other people of the 3rd Division attacking in support of us were anywhere in sight I gave orders for the company to withdraw from LA CHAVATTE village and we held the trenches and junctions at L.23.b.58.70 and 18.w.15.05. While here a strong attack came in from BLUCHER Wood and we engaged our third good enemy target in the open with good effect.

At 7.30 the enemy appeared to be on our right and well behind us, so I ordered Capt. Allen who had joined us by this time to take charge at L.23.b.58.70 and hold while I took a small party to get in touch with the platoon of the 44th under Lieut. Collie who was holding a block at PELOPONESE ALLEY and PELICAN ALLEY. We encountered the enemy in between us so I decided to try andget in touch with the 44th right flank at L.17.b.65.55. We ~~[illegible]~~ found the enemy had worked into L.17.c.90.90 andonly after a very severe fight in which we had two men killed and 3 men wounded did we succeed in getting through to secure the line.

I put in a block at L.17.c.80.80.

I got in touch with No.3 company 44th Bn. right platoon under Sgt. Beckett andordered him to bring up bombs which he did.

On returning I met the whole party under Capt. Allan retiring towards me. The blocks at L.23.b.58.70 and 18.c.15.05 having been rushed by the enemy in considerable strength I ord red everyone to stand steady andthen organised a counter attack with the new supply of bombs at hand. Sgt. Beckett 44th and a Sgt. of the 42nd led the left party down the old trench to L.23.b.58.70 and with the remainder I proceeded down trenches in L.17.d. At this time the casualties inflicted on the enemy were very heavy. We succeeded in reaching approximately L.23.a.90.90 and seeing that if the left party came up speedily the Boshe would be trapped I turned over my party to a Sgt. of the 42nd. and went and had the left party pressed forward quickly.

In this way we succeeded in trapping in dugouts and trenches about 40 of the enemy and captured two more Machine Guns.

Sheet No.3

It was now getting dark and I decided to consolidate and if possible connect up with the 44th front line at L.18.a.90.90.

We were already connected up with their right flank at L.17.b.65.55.

I turned over the line from L.23.a.90.90 to L.17.b.58.70 to two sergeants of the 42nd who were with me throughout and Sgt. Beckett in charge of a mixed 42nd and 44th party at L.18.c.15.05.

I then went back to the 44th front line and met Capt. Townsend who reported that Col. Davis had anticipated the necessity of a line connecting up here and had placed all available men under Lieut. Collie and Warner with orders to connect up.

I took another section forward checked up their line as I went along and with these two sections finished connecting up with Sgt. Beckett.

O.C. 44th. arranged a barrage for the area which was very well placed and came on intermittently.

I met O.C. 42nd at Bn. H.Q. at 12 midnight and explained situation.

I then took Capt. Grafftey over the line and turned over portion of the line occupied by 42nd to him and portion occupied bb the 44th. to one company of the 49th Bn. which came up.

At 4 am. the line was intact and the men in good position.

There never was greater dash or perseverence shown by men than that by the company of the 42nd. who cleared about 4 miles of net work of trench, fought steadily and at deadly close range for 10 hours and the spirit was such that throughout the men continually cheered.

Every man played his part.

The work of the Lewis Gunners was the best I ever saw and reliability of the two sergeants of the 42nd their handling of their men was splendid so also was that of other N.C.Os.

The large number of blocks that had to be put in from time to time made a heavy demand on their initiative and ability to stick it. I regret that as I do not know their names I am unable to put forward recommendations I would like.

All the N.C.Os in the 42nd company repeatedly earned decorations by their good work and many of the men who led rushes from time to time are worthy of special awards.

Sheet No.4

The Lieut. who was wounded rushing the block at L.18.a.70.50 and also the other Lieut. who first led the company down Pelican Alley did very excellent work and are worthy of recommendation for the military cross in my opinion.

Sgd. D.B.Martyn,
Maj or
2nd i/c 44th Bn.

Note. 3 of the captured guns also a recaptured Hotchkiss gun were taken out of the trenches back to the village of FOUQUESCOURT by the 44th Bn.

4

Narrative of operations carried out by the 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. on August 26th 1918.

At 8 o'clock in the evening of the 25th August the Battalion left Y Camp and proceeded by route march through ARRAS to the first assembly area. This area located immediately east of ARRAS and south of the CEMETERY was reached about midnight. A Company occupied BLANGY trench while B, C and D Companies were distributed in cellars along the ARRAS-CAMBRAI Road and the CEMETERY Road.

At 6.45 am, the Battalion received orders to move forward and to take up a position north of the ARRAS-CAMBRAI Road and west of ORANGE HILL, 800 yards in rear of the R.C.R The Battalion went forward in single file via the PELVES overland route and arrived in the new assembly area at 8.40 am. At 10 am. orders were received to go forward to the attack, the 42nd Battalion R.H.C. to be in Brigade reserve and to follow 800 yards in rear of the R.C.R. The Battalion went forward in Artillery formation, A Company on the right, B Company on the left with C Company on the right and D Company on the left in close support, and arrived in area immediately west of MONCHY LE PREUX at 11.22 am. when the Battalion was halted in line with the Battalion H.Q. and the reserve Coy. of the R.C.R. A heavy concentration of enemy artillery was put down in this area and enemy batteries were enfilading from both flanks. We, however, sustained no casualties.

At 2.30 pm. an order was received from Brigade that the 2nd Canadian Division had been diverted south and that the 3rd Canadian Division right boundary now became the ARRAS-CAMBRAI Road. The 42nd Canadian Battalion was ordered to side slip one thousand yards to the right and to attack and capture a line which had for its objective FACTORY Trench on the right and the BOIS DE VERT on the left including the maze of trenches between MONCHY LE PREUX and the ARRAS-CAMBRAI Road. In this attack the R.C.R. were to cooperate on the left and the 2nd C.M.R. Battalion to protect our right flank on the CAMBRAI Road from O.7.d.3.0. to FACTORY Trench. This attack was divided into three distinct tasks -

(a) First task -

A Company from CHERRY and EAST Trenches to feed one platoon into SHIRT Trench and one platoon into FORK Trench each of these platoons being followed by a platoon in support and were ordered to make good SHIRT, SOD, FORK and SPADE Trenches as far as the ARRAS-CAMBRAI Road. While A Company was clearing out this system of trenches B Company were to work their way down COLUMBUS Trench into PICK communication trench and thus effect an entrance.

(b) Second task -

A Company on the right to clear AVENUE, LADLE, KNIFE and CRESCENT Trenches to SADDLE support inclusive, B Company on the left to bomb out and clear PICK and TAPE and that part of SADDLE Support north of PICK communication trench.

(c) Third task -

C on the right to clear the system of trenches from BADGER Trench inclusive to the GRID LINE between O.8. and O.14 up to and including FACTORY Trench in the final objective and D on the left to clear trenches north of BADGER trench and to capture the BOIS DE VERT.

At 4.30 pm. the advance began through a heavy concentration of hostile artillery. A Company under Major S.J. Mathewson, M.C. moved off across the open, two platoons to FORK andtwo platoons to SHIRT trench in O.7. b and d. Bombing parties pushed on down SOD and SPADE trenches. These trenches had been heavily bombarded by our own artillery and in some places almost obliterated. These places were swept by intense Machine Gun fire from the front and right flank as a result of which A Company suffered a number of casualties and the advance was delayed. By 6.30 pm the whole of the first objective had been reached. Major S.J. Mathewson was wounded in the shoulder at this point and Lt. J.B.T. Montgomerie, M.M. took over command of the company. A Company pushed on down AVENUE Trench, LADLE, KNIFE and CRESCENT Trenches after sharp fighting in which four men were killed and 15 wounded. One enemy Machine Gun was captured. The enemy strong point at the junction of HOE Support Trench and POMMEL ALLEY in O.8.c. was found to be strongly manned and a block was put in at KNIFE and CRESCENT trenches. Posts were also established in GORDON AVENUE near HOE Support trench and in the sourthern extremity of KNIFE trench. A patrol established touch with the 2nd Division in LOCK trench south of the CAMBRAI Road.

On the left flank B Company under Lt. W.G. Scott moved up PICK avenue under heavy shell fire, starting immediately after A Company. The advance was delayed by heavy Machine Gun fire at the junction of PICK ALLEY with the SUNKEN ROAD in O.8.a. Two men were killed Lt. F.C. Dobell and four men were wounded at this point. The Company was finally able to cross without further casualties by using smoke bombs. By 8.30 pm. SADDLE Support trenchwas made good from O.8.c.45.80 to VINE AVENUE in O.8.a. afte sharp hand to hand fighting. Posts were established well forward in VINE AVENUE PICK AVENUE and TROWELL ALLEY. Fourteen Machine Guns were captured in this trench alone. On the right flank touch could not immediately be secured with A Company owing to the pocket of Germans holding out in the POMMEL ALLEY strong point. Strong pressure was maintained, however, and early on the morning of the 28th August the enemy withdrew and the line was connected up. On the left flank Lt. W. Molson took a patrol to connect up with the Royal Canadian Regiment who were reported to be in CANNISTER AVENUEbut found that HILL AVENUE in O.8.c. was still occupied by the enemy who bombed the patrol inflicting four casualties on it and putting a Lewis Gun out of action. A defensive flank was then established from SADDLE Support trench along VINE AVENUE to EAST Trench in O.1.d. where communication was finally established with the R.C.R.

At 10.30 pm. orders were received from the Brigade that the forward Companies were not to advance beyond the old British front line in O.8.b. and c. It was then decided to hold the line SADDLE Support KNIFE Trench with posts well forward in all C.Ts. leading towards the enemy line. C Company under Lieut. Gilmour was moved into SPADE and AVENUE Trenches to support A Company

Sheet No.3

on the right and D Company under Capt.W.A.Grafftey was moved to PICK and FORK trenches in support of B Company on the left. All Companies were organised in depth and the Battalion was in this position when the 9th Brigade attacked through it at 5 am. on the 26th August. At least twenty dead Germans were counted in the area and a number of wounded prisoners were captured by us.

The operation was carried out with the utmost dash and gallantry by all ranks and tested the endurance of every man. For six and a half hours the Companies were heavily engaged at close quarters pressing home the attack with bomb and bayonet. There was heavy shelling during the early stages while the whole area was swept by intense Machine Gun fire from the front and both flanks. The attack resulted in the capture of a heavily wired and stubbornly defended enemy trench system to a depth of one thousand yards on a front of nearly a mile and was of vital importance to the success of the operation planned for the following morning.

I wish to specially mention the splendid work of Major C.B. Topp, M.C. who took charge of the forward operation and arranged the connecting up and disposition of the Companies at the final objective.

Our captures included -

3	4.1" Howitzers
3	77-mm. Field Guns
1	Anti Aircraft gun
1	3" Trench Gun
1	Light Trench Mortar
8	Heavy Machine Guns
10	Light Machine Guns.

Total casualties, 3 officers, 42 O.R.

Major,
Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

Report on operations 27th/28th August about
JIGSAW WOOD, ARTILLERY HILL and BOIRY NOTRE DAME

At 1.50 pm. Battalion H.Q. was moved forward and established in SHIRT Trench at approximately 0.7.b.0.5.

On the morning of the 27th instructions were received from Brigade that the Battalion would be prepared to relieve the 52nd Canadian Battalion at the BOIS DE VERT and reconnaissances of the forward area were made.

At 9.30 pm. we received instructions to relieve the 58th Battalion and one company of the 49th. Bn.(E.R.) around the BOIS DU SART and to touch up with the P.P.C.L.I. on the left flank. As this meant a relief in the darkness over unknown country for a distance of 4000 yards which had not been previously reconnoitered nor had even been seen in daylight it entailed many difficulties. The Commanding Officer, Adjutant, Scout officer and a party of scouts and runners immediately moved over to the H.Q. of the 58th. Battalion arriving there at 1 am. to make the necessary arrangements for the relief. A route from SPADE Trench to HIGHLAND Trench was scouted out and the Battalion crossed overland following a path along the edge of EAST Trench to the MONCHY-PELVES Road and thence by overland route and trenches to the BOIS DU SART. Relief was completed by 5.10 am. The area taken over was a small narrow salient completely encircling the BOIS DU SART and about 500 yards in front of the Battalions on either flank.

The Battalion was distributed as follows -
C Company on the right - two platoons from approximately 0.4.c.0.5. to the Wood at 0.3.b.6.3. and two platoons along the southern edge of the wood from 0.3.b.6.3. to 0.4.a.4.7. D Company in the centre on the extreme tip of the salient running from 0.4.a.4.7. around the eastern and northern edge of the Wood to junction of TREE and PUG Trenches in I.33.c. B Company on the left along TREE and TRUNK trenches and extending over to CANNISTER Trench in the neighbourhood of KEELING COPSE . A Company in support in POODLE Trench.

About 10 am. on the 28th verbal instructions were received advising that PELVES had been captured in the early morning by the 49th Battalion and that a further attack would be launched at 11 am. The 9th Brigade on our right were to capture BOIRY and ARTILLERY HILL and the P.P.C.L.I. on our left to attack and capture JIGSAW WOOD We were to conform with our flanks.

At 11.30 am. tasks were allotted as follows -
D Company;- to make good in succession the small wood in I.33.d. and I.34.c. and the neck of woods astride the PELVES-BOIRY Road from I.34.c.2.8. to JIGSAW Wood after which a line was to be established along the crest of the ridge to the east from the BOID DU SART at 0.4.a.30.85. to the eastern corner of JIGSAW Wood at I.34.a.95.10.

B Company;- To make good with one platoon the southern edge of JIGSAW WOOD to protect D Company's left flank until the P.P.C.L.I. were able to clear the northern portion of the Wood.

C Company;- To straighten the line along the eastern end of BOIS DU SART in 0.4.a. connecting up with the right of D Company at 0.4.a.30.85.

A Company:- To remain in support in TRUNK,TREE and PEAR trenches with the balance of BCompany.

From these positions all companies were instructed to conform with the 9th Brigade on the right without further orders. BOIRY Trench and ARTILLERY HILL were laid down as the objectives for the second advance. To carry out the first stage of the operation it was necessary to cross a deep re-entrant cutting into the high ground in a southerly direction from the SCARPE valley and to scale a woodd slope on the eastern side. The whole line of advance was exposed to Machine Gun and artillery fire from the north.

At 11.45 am. Lt. Budd jumped off with his platoon from the south western edge of the BOIS DU SART followed by Lt. Munroe with his platoon. Heavy fire was immediately opened from the left flank and Lt. Budd was wounded. Advantage was taken of some natural cover however, and the first objective was reached with very few casualties. Little resistence was offered by the enemy occuping the positions and about twenty prisoners some of them wounded were captured. Meanwhile a platoon of B Company under No.418115 Cpl. McMillan, K.L. jumped off from TRUNK Trench and pushed on across the valley and up the slope under intense fire to the edge of JIGSAW WOOD where a position was taken up in shell holes. Sixty five prisoners and several small guns were captured in some artillery dugouts at I.33.b.6.5. by two runners attached to this platoon. Lieut. L.H.Biggar and two linemen went forward with this platoon and established an advanced telephone station from which valuable information was sent to Battalion H.Q.

At 1.40 pm. the line was established along the crest of the ridge in front of BOIS DU SART and JIGSAW WOOD and the advance towards BOIRY Trench and ARTILLERY HILL began. Good progress was made by C Company under Lt. W.J.Kavanagh on the right in spite of considerable artillery and enfilade Machine Gun fire. BOIRY Trench was occupied shortly before two o'clock by this company Lt. Kavanagh and Sgt. Anderson with small patrol pushed forward into the village and touch was establised with A Company of the 58th Canadian Battalion at the crucifix at the western outskirts of BOIRY about 2.15 pm. Lt. Kavanagh kept on pushing forward and succeeded in getting a point close to the N.E. corner of BOIRY when he was wounded by a sniper. The patrol then withdrew to the neighbourhood of the crucifix. On the left flank Lt. Craig and Lt. Munroe with two platoons of D Company advancing in conjunction with the P.P.C.L.I. who had by this time cleared the northern portion of JIGSAW WOOD, met with stubborn opposition from a pill box and an old artillery position in which the enemy had established himself with several Machine Guns. Lt. Munroe was severely wounded and a number of other casualties occurred here. Both D Company and the P.P.C.L.I. on the left were seriously held up. Lewis Guns and snipers however pushed forward with great determination from shell hole to shell hole in the face of intense direct Machine Gun fire making good the ground yard by yard. Covering fire was brought to bear from the right but the enemy held on with exceptional bravery until 877647 Pte. Russell,W.J. worked around and knocked out the guns with bombs.

BOIRY Trench was finally reached shortly after 4 pm.

and our line was continuous across the trench with outposts commanding ARTILLERY HILL. We were in touch on the right with A Company of the 58th. Canadian Batt lion under Lt. Thorpe at the BOIRY crucifix and on the left with the P.P.C.L.I. forward Companies under Lt. White, M.C. at the junction of BOIRY Trench and the light railway at I.34.b.95.05. The Companies were organised in depth alongx this line the rear platoons organising a system of shell holes about 300 yards in rear of BOIRY Trench. A and B Companies remained in support along the line of the ridge from BOIS DU SART to JIGSAW WOOD. This area was heavily shelled without cessation for four hours during the afternoon and early evening and a number of casualties occurred here.

At 5.30 pm. our artillery began a heavy shoot on the whole BOIRY Area evidently with faulty information as to our position. There was a particularly intense concentration of fire by the heavy artillery in the vicinity o f BOIRY CRUFIFIX and ARTILLERY HILL from which places our outposts and the 58th Battalion Company were forced to withdraw after losing several men. The shoot slackened about 6.30 pm but there was short shotting in the area until 8 o'Clock. The positions from which we withdrew were afterwards reoccupied by us. A verbal message that the enemy was counter attacking was received from the right flank shortly after our artillery opened but the only sign of the enemy that our observers could see were parties of two or three moving about among the group of small woods at I.36.b.7.d. No organised advance was made against ARTILLERY HILL at any time after we reached it.

Major C.B. Topp, M.C. who was in charge of the forward operations on BOIRY Trench and the disposal of the Companies, rendered splendid service, making repeated trips to the flanks and throughout the operation his work was outstanding.

On the night of the 28th/29th the Battalion was relieved by the first group Canadian Composite Brigade and it was not till after 6.30 am. on the morning of the 29th that the relief was fully completed. After relief the Battalion moved back into billets in ARRAS.

Our captures on the 28th included -

4 Heavy Machine Guns
2 Light do.
3 3" Trench Guns
1 Light Trench Mortar

Prisoners captured were estimated at 280. There was no attempt to keep a check on the exact number of prisoners taken as owing to the nature of the fighting men could not be spared for escort duty.

Total casualties for the tour - 5 officers, 104 O.R

The total captures for the tour included -

3 4.1." Howitzers
3 77 mm. Field Guns
1 Anti Aircraft gun
4 3" Trench Guns

Sheet No.4

Captures Continued

12 Heavy Machine Guns
12 Light Machine Guns

Major
Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R. H.C.

SECRET War Diary

42ND CANADIAN BN. R.H.C COPY NO. 16

INSTRUCTIONS FOR OFFENSIVE NO. 1 6.8.18

1
INTENTION — In conformity with the foregoing Instructions for Offensive No. 1, the 42nd. Cdn. Battalion will attack on Z day.

2
OBJECTIVE — Hill 102 and the low ground beyond the hill to about railway running from D 15 d 1.3 through 16 a. and 10 a.

Attacking Companies on reaching railway running from D 16 d 1.3 through 16 a. and 10 a. will push outposts well forward from this line. Later it is the intention to relieve the Outpost Line by the Reserve Company.

On reaching Objective Companies will immediately get in touch with the Units on their Flanks.

3.
ORDER OF ATTACK

A Company on the Right
B " Centre
C " on the Left
D " in close support
H.Q with D Company.

4.
BATTALION FLANKS — Final Objective - On the right, Copse at D 15 d 5.7.
On the Left, D 10 central, natural feature indicating left boundary ST. QUENTIN WOOD

5.
BATTALION FRONTAGE — From GREEN LINE will be D 13 a. 50.95 to D 1 d. 1.5.

6
COMPANY FRONTAGES
A Company - From Right Boundary to D 16 a. 0.2.
B - Thence to D 10. a. 5.0.
C - Thence to Left Boundary
D Company will move in rear of B Company

7
PRELIMINARY MOVES-ORDER OF MARCH — From BOIS DE GENTELLES to Area of GENTELLES Trench between ROYE Road and HEKNES ALLEY (First Assembly Position) D - A - B - C Coys. H.Q. Distribution in (First Assembly Position from Right to Left H.Q. C.B.A.D Coys.

Second move from Assembly Trench to Bridges, thence to Second Assembly Point - C - B - A - D-HQ

Second Assembly Area will be from point in HEIDELBERG Trench in C 5. c. to Road junction at C 5. c 90.95 with right flank about 300 yards North of ROYE Road.

8.
MOVE FROM 2ND ASSEMBLY TO GREEN LINE — Companies will move independently at _____ hour from this Assembly Point to GREEN LINE, to be in position in GREEN LINE at Zero plus three and three-quarter hours, moving forward to the attack at Zero plus four hours.

9.
ATTACK — Companies will move forward to the attack at Zero plus four hours.

10
SUGGESTED FORMATIONS FOR MOVES — (It is desirable to keep men in hand)

From First Assembly Position across river - Platoons if possible.

From Second Assembly Position to GREEN LINE - Lines of Platoons, to go into Artillery Formation if the situation demands it.

From GREEN LINE, attacking Companies on two platoon front - First two platoons extended, remainder in small columns (lines of Sections)

11
SCOUT SECTION — 1 Sniper and 1 Observer will be attached to each of A.B.C Coys. Balance of the section will move with Headquarters.

J. D. MACLEOD
Captain/Adjutant

Issued at _____ Copies to/

1 H.Q 7th C.I.B.
2.3.4. RCR-PPCLI-8th Bns.
5. C.O.
6.7. 2 i/c Adjutant
8 Scout O.
12.13.14.15. O.Cs ABCD Coys.
16.17.18 War Diary File

YMTMB 19

SECRET

EXTRACTS FROM COPY

7TH CANADIAN INF. BRIGADE INSTRUCTIONS TO OFFENSIVE

dated 5.8.18

1. (a) On a day and at a time to be notified later, the CANADIAN CORPS in co-operation with the FRENCH on the right and the AUSTRALIAN CORPS on the left in an attack on the enemy's positions to the EAST and to the SOUTH EAST of AMIENS, with the object of driving back and defeating the enemy, and so freeing the main line of Railway between AMIENS and PARIS.

(b) The 3rd. CANADIAN DIVISION will be on the right, the 1st. CANADIAN DIVISION will be in the centre, and the 2nd. CANADIAN DIVISION on the left.

The 4th CANADIAN DIVISION will be in reserve during the first stage of the attack, and will later pass through the 3rd. CANADIAN

(d) The 9th CANADIAN INFANTRY BRIGADE, with two Battalions of the 8th CDN. INFANTRY BRIGADE, will capture the enemy's positions up to, and including, the GREEN LINE.

The 7th CANADIAN INFANTRY BRIGADE will pass through the GREEN LINE AT Zero plus 4 hours, and capture the enemy's position up to, and including, the RED LINE (approximately the line of the TRAMWAY.)

2. Action of the 7th CANADIAN INFANTRY BRIGADE prior to YZ night:-

On the night of the 6th/7th August, The Brigade will move, under orders to be issued later, from the SALEUX Area to the GENTELLES WOOD Area, as shown on the attached map.

3. On YZ night:- The Brigade will move from the GENTELLES WOOD Area, to its assembly areas, as shown in YELLOW on attached Map.

4. At Zero, plus 60 minutes, the Brigade will commence to cross the LUCE RIVER by the Bridges to the SOUTH of the ROYE-AMIENS Road, numbered 49, 50, 52, 53 and 54 respectively.

Units will move from assembly areas in time to commence crossing the river at the following times:-

The R.C.R.	Zero plus 60 Minutes
49th Bn. (E.R.)	ditto 80 "
42nd Bn. (R.H.C.)	ditto 100 "
P.P.C.L.I.	ditto 150 "

After crossing the River, Battalions will assemble to the WEST and NORTH WEST of HILL 104, in the Areas shown in GREEN on attached Map.

5. The Brigade will attack with three Battalions in line, with one Battalion in Reserve.

The R.C.R.	will be on the Right
42nd. Bn. (R.H.C.)	will be in the Centre
49th Bn. (E.R.)	will be on the Left
P.P.C.L.I.	will be in Reserve.

Objectives of Battalions, and inter Battalion boundaries will be as shown on attached Map.

6. Battalions will move independently from the GREEN Assembly Areas, deploy, and attack through the 9th CANADIAN INFANTRY BRIGADE from the GREEN LINE.

The attack to commence at Zero plus 4 hours.

7 The R.C.R. and the 49th Bn. will be prepared to assist the 42nd. Bn. in its attack on HILL 102, by bringing flanking fire to bear.

8. The P.P.C.L.I. will follow approximately 800 yards in the rear of the 42nd. Battalion, but will not advance further than the low ground in D.17.b. & d. without orders from Brigade Headquarters, or unless the tactical situation requires it as provided for in para. 9 hereof.

10 When the RED LINE has been captured, Battalions will consolidate their positions, and organize their defences in depth.

Defences are to be sited so as to ensure the holding of HILL 102, which is the main tactical feature on the Brigade front. Detailed instructions re consolidation will be issued later.

SECRET

EXTRACTS FROM COPY

7TH CANADIAN INF. BRIGADE INSTRUCTIONS TO OFFENSIVE

dated 5.8.18

1. (a) On a day and at a time to be notified later, the CANADIAN CORPS in co-operation with the FRENCH on the right and the AUSTRALIAN CORPS on the left in an attack on the enemy's positions to the EAST and to the SOUTH EAST of AMIENS, with the object of driving back and defeating the enemy, and so freeing the main line of Railway between AMIENS and PARIS.

(b) The 3rd. CANADIAN DIVISION will be on the right, the 1st. CANADIAN DIVISION will be in the centre, and the 2nd. CANADIAN DIVISION on the left.

The 4th CANADIAN DIVISION will be in reserve during the first stage of the attack, and will later pass through the 3rd. CANADIAN DIVISIONS

For (d) See attached Slip

(e) Artillery, Tanks, Machine Guns, and Cavalry are co-operating together with the other Branches of the Service.

2. Action of the 7th CANADIAN INFANTRY BRIGADE prior to YZ night:-

On the night of the 6th/7th August, The Brigade will move, under orders to be issued later, from the SALEUX Area to the GENTILLES WOOD Area, as shown on the attached map.

3. On YZ night:- The Brigade will move from the GENTILLES WOOD Area, to its assembly areas, as shown in YELLOW on attached Map.

4. At Zero, plus 60 minutes, the Brigade will commence to cross the LUCE RIVER by the Bridges to the SOUTH of the ROYE-AMIENS Road, numbered 49, 50, 52, 53, and 54 respectively.

Units will move from assembly areas in time to commence crossing the river at the following times:-

The R.C.R.	Zero plus 60 Minutes	
49th Bn. (E.R.)	ditto 80	"
42nd Bn. (R.H.C.)	ditto 100	"
P.P.C.L.I.	ditto 150	"

After crossing the River, Battalions will assemble to the WEST and NORTH WEST of HILL 104, in the Areas shown in GREEN on attached Map.

5. The Brigade will attack with three Battalions in line, with one Battalion in Reserve.

The R.C.R.	will be on the Right
42nd. Bn. (R.H.C.)	will be in the Centre
49th Bn. (E.R.)	will be on the Left
P.P.C.L.I.	will be in Reserve.

Objectives of Battalions, and inter Battalion boundaries will be as shown on attached Map.

6. Battalions will move independently from the GREEN Assembly Areas, deploy, and attack through the 9th CANADIAN INFANTRY BRIGADE from the GREEN LINE.

The attack to commence at Zero plus 4 hours.

7 The R.C.R. and the 49th Bn. will be prepared to assist the 42nd. Bn. in its attack on HILL 102, by bringing flanking fire to bear.

8. The P.P.C.L.I. will follow approximately 800 yards in the rear of the 42nd. Battalion, but will not advance further than the low ground in D.7.b. & d. without orders from Brigade Headquarters, or unless the tactical situation requires it as provided for in para 9 hereof.

10 When the RED LINE has been captured, Battalions will consolidate their positions, and organize their defences in depth.

Defences are to be sited so as to ensure the holding of HILL 102, which is the main tactical feature on the Brigade front. Detailed instructions re consolidation will be issued later.

11. One Company from each of the R.C.R., 4th Bn. and 49th Bn. will be pushed forward from the RED LINE as an outpost.

Battalion Commanders are reminded of the necessity of keeping in touch with the enemy.

ARTILLERY There will be no preliminary bombardment.

The advance to the GREEN LINE will have been covered by a shrapnel barrage, and this barrage will lift from in front of GREEN LINE at Zero plus 4 hours.

There will be no barrage forward of the GREEN LINE.

The advance of the Brigade will be covered by heavy Artillery firing on selected points, and by long range field guns firing H.E.

Forward sections of Field Artillery are being detailed to co-operate with the Infantry.

Further instructions re Artillery will be issued later.

TANKS. Instructions will be issued later

MACHINE GUNS Instructions will be issued later.

7TH T.M. BATTERY The O.C. 7th T.M. Battery will detail two guns to each Battalion.

Guns and ammunition at the rate of 54 rounds per gun will be carried on pack mules.

Details of arrangements for further supply of ammunition will be notified later.

COMMUNICATION Instructions will be issued separately.

ADDITIONAL

17 SURPRISE & SECRECY

(a) The attack will be a surprise attack.

(b) It is therefore of vital importance that secrecy should be observed. All possible steps will be taken to prevent the scope or date of operations becoming known except to those taking part. Any Officer, N.C.O., or man, discussing the operation in public or communicating details regarding it to any person, either soldier or civilian, not immediately concerned, will be severely dealt with.

(c) All troops billeted or bivouacked East of R. CELLE will remain under cover from aerial observation during hours of daylight. All Units and formations will be responsible for the positioning of

(d) Transporting Battalions must stir up to the transport movement across country during daylight must be kept down.
Low flying Aeroplanes should be dealt with by the normal A-A Lewis Guns: there must be no increase in the volume of fire.

(e) Existing orders as to use of telephones in the danger area will be rigidly enforced.

(f) Commanders will ensure that the number of Officers reconnoitring the enemy's positions is limited to those for whom such reconnoissance is essential.

Reconnoitring Officers must not go about in parties larger than two persons, must avoid high ground and O.P.s, and must not display maps in the forward area.

Commanding Officers of Units in front line will report at once to higher authority any disregard of these orders.

19 ANTI-AIRCRAFT PROTECTION Every effort must be made to deal with low flying E.A. A-A Lewis Guns must be mounted at every stage of the advance. Special attention should be paid to A-A protection of Transport, both halted and on the move.

20 LIGHT SIGNALS The following Light Signals will be employed by:

	SIGNAL	MEANING
(1) Cavalry	White Star turning to Red on a parachute fired from 1½ Very Pistol	Advanced Troops of Cavalry are here

LIGHT SIGNALS Cont.

	SIGNAL	MEANING
(ii) Australian Corps	(1) No. 32 Grenade GREEN over GREEN over GREEN	S.O.S.
	(2) No. 32 Grenade WHITE over WHITE over WHITE	Success Signal, i.e We have reached objective.
(iii) Canadian Corps	(1) No. 32 Grenade RED over RED over RED	(a) S.O.S. (b) We are held up and cannot advance without help. (c) Enemy is counter attacking.
	(2) No. 32 Grenade GREEN over GREEN over GREEN	(a) Lift your fire, we are going to advance. (b) Stop firing.
	(3) Three WHITE Very Lights in quick succession	We are here
(IV) XXXI French Corps.	To be notified later.	

21. R.A.F.

(a) Contact Patrols

(i) #5 Squadron will work with the Canadian Corps.

(ii) #8 Squadron will work with Tanks.

(iii) #6 Squadron will work with Cavalry

(iv) These machines will carry special markings as follows:

(1) Machine working with Tanks - Black band on middle of right side of tail.

(2) Machine working with Cavalry - Two streamers on both inside struts.

(3) All contact patrol machines - Rectangular panels 2' x 1' on both lower planes about 3 feet from the fuselage.

(b) Red ground flares will be used.

(c) Bombing & Machine Gun Work

(i) Approximately 5 day bombing Squadrons and 4 night bombing Squadrons will be working on the Army front.

(ii) 22nd Wing, 8 Squadrons of Scouts, will be evenly distributed over the Army front and employed in engaging ground targets by bombing and machine gunning. These Scouts will operate in two phases - from Z to Z plus 4 hours - Eastwards of the GREEN LINE and from Z plus 4 hours onwards Eastward from the RED LINE.

(iii) In addition, Scout Squadrons of the 9th Brigade will provide high patrols.

8

Operation Order No.205 Copy No...
by Major R.L.H.Ewing,D.S.O.,M.C.
SECRET Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.
15th August 1918.

1. The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade will be relieved by the 3rd Canadian Infantry Brigade night of 15th/16th August 1918.

2. The 13th Bn. R.H.C. will relieve the 42nd Battalion, R.H.C. in left front FARVILLERS Sector. The Battalion after relief will move to the LE QUESNEL Area.

3. All Companies will pile their Lewis Guns and discs at their respective ration dumps on way out. A guard of one man per gun will be left in charge.

4. 2 guides per platoon and 1 per company H.Q. will report to their respective ration dumps by 9.30 pm.

5. Battalion Scout Section will guide relieving Battalion as far as ration dumps.

6. All captured Machine Guns will be handed over and receipts obtained. Numbers of all guns will be taken.

7. All empty water tins will be sent to ration dumps Filled tins will be handed over as trench stores.

8. Bombs, Rifle Grenades, S.O.S., and All S.A.A. over and above 120 rounds per man will be handed over as trench stores.

9. Completion of relief will be wired to Bn. H.Q. by using the code phrase "Highlander at...." Should line be out runner will be sent.

J.D.MacLeod,
Capt.Adjt.

Copies to 7th Canadian Inf. Bde.
13th Bn. R.H.C.
49th Bn. (E.R.)
O.C. A.B C.D. Cos.

9

S E C R E T

Operation Order No. 204 by Major R.L.H. Ewing, D.S.O., M.C. Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H. C.

Copy No.....

Reference Map 66.E. NE.

18th August 1918.

---

1. INTENTION — To capture PARVILLERS by bombing attack from North flank.

2. 1st OBJECTIVE — ROUVROY-PARVILLERS Road from old German front line at L.22.b.50.60 to L.23.c.60.20. Mopping up intermediate trench system.

3. 2nd OBJECTIVE — To mop up PARVILLERS.

4. TASKS — D Company will use 2 platoons to bomb down old German front and support lines running through L.11.c and d. - 17.a. - 17.c. - 22.b. 28.a. followed by 2 platoons supporting the attack.
A Company to bomb down trenches running through 17.b. - 18.d. - 17.d. - 18.c. - 23.a,b and c and establish posts along trench system from L.18.a.8.9. to L.23.a.6.2. placing blocks in C.Ts. running east from the line and to mop up intermediate trenches.

5. SIGNALS — (a) On reaching ROUVROY-PARVILLERS Road - Rifle Grenade Green over green over green: (b) On continuing attack from this point - 2 white very lights fired in quick succession: (c) To indicate progress in PARVILLERS - green over green over green.

6. — B Company will take over left front line to be vacated by D Company. B and C Companies will push forward patrols when attack reaches ROUVROY-PARVILLERS Road and be prepared to move the Companies across to support the attack.

7. ARTILLERY — (a) Lines of fire to be lifted to clear area of first objective and 200 yards S.E. of the ROUVROY-PARVILLERS Road (b) A bombardment to be arranged on PARVILLERS to cease on the green over green over green.

8. ZERO HOUR — 12 noon 12.8.18 plus or minus zero will be notified to all concerned by the code - "Montreal" plus or minus followed by number of minutes, e.g. Montreal plus 90 will be 1.30 pm.

9. — Machine Gun and Stokes arrangements direct.

J.D.MacLeod,
Capt. Adjt.

Issued 6 am.

Copies 7th Canadian Inf Bde.
O.C. P.P.C.L.I. Bn.
O.C. 44th Bn.
O.C. A.B.C.D Cos. 42nd Bn.

RDD.2

10

44th Canadian Infantry

August 18th 1918

Major ROYAL EWING, D.S.O., M.C.,
Commanding 42nd Battalion,
(Royal Highlanders of Canada)

My Dear Major,-

Your letter and accompanying recommendations in connection with Major MARTYN's work, received and very much appreciated.

I beg to thank you for the generous attitude taken and take this opportunity of expressing the admiration I felt personally at the way in which all ranks of the 42nd fought.

Major MARTYN, himself, remarked that the spirit of the 42nd was enough to stimulate any Officer to join in the fight.

I can only say, further, that I sincerely trust the bond of friendship formed between the two Battalions will be a lasting one.

Wishing you and the 42nd Battalion the very best of luck in the future, I am,

Yours Sincerely,

R D Davies

Lieut.-Colonel,
Commanding 44th Canadian Infantry.

Enclose
2 Recommendations.

MAPS

WAR DIARY

42ND CDN. INF. BATTALION

AUGUST 1918.

OFFICIAL—PUBLICATIONS—OFFICIELLES

O. H. M. S.

SERVICE DE SA MAJESTE

If not properly addressed, please make correction on envelope and return same to Deputy Minister, Dept. of National Defence, Ottawa, Ont.

Si l'adresse est inexacte veuillez rectifier et retourner au Sous-ministre, Défense Nationale, Ottawa, Ont.

25M—9-47 (384)
H.Q. 224-15-7

CAMBRAI ROAD.

(2nd Edit.n)

NOTE CHANGE OF COLOUR.
British Trenches RED
German " BLUE

ENEMY ORGANISATION, 27-7-18

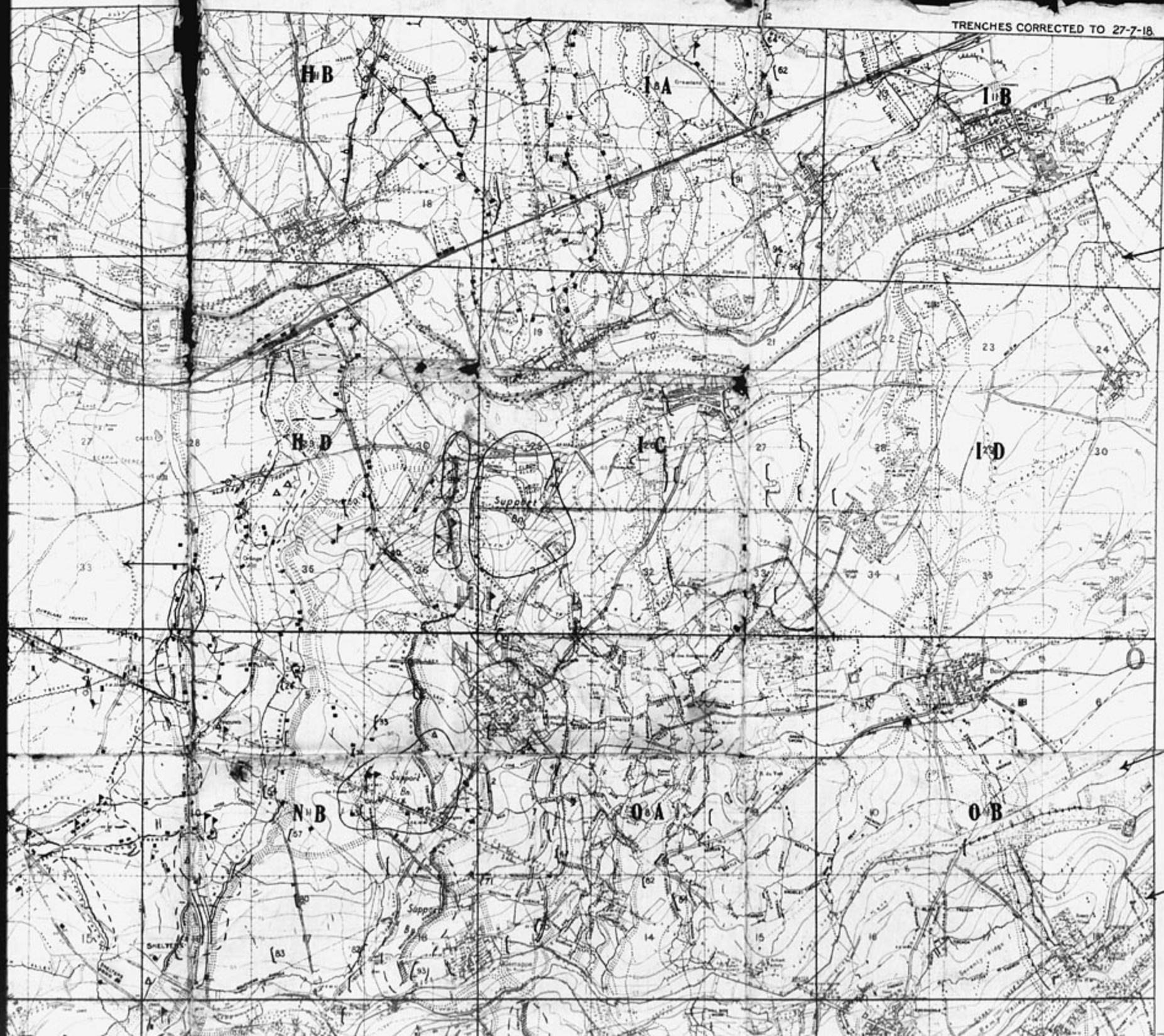
Railways probably in use. (Gauge written).
Railways disused and not shewn on detail.
Main Tracks.
Dumps: Supply. Ammunition. Nature unknown. (Areas of Large Dumps Shaded.)
Huts, Areas of Camps hatched.
Balloon (bed or shed).
Balloon (normal point of ascent).
Red Cross Sign.
Aerodromes.
Observation Posts.
Huts and Shelters.
Small Areas of Movement.

INTELLIGENCE LOG TARGET MAP.

Information to 20-8-18.

REFERENCE.

Trenches Occupied
Probable Line of Resistance
Posts
Machine Guns
Trench Mortars
Observation Posts
Strong Shelters
Headquarters
Dumps
Dressing Stations
Bridges
Active Battery Positions
Company — Suspected


TRENCHES CORRECTED TO 27-7-18.
H B
I A
I B
H D
I C
I D
N B
O A
O B
Support Bn
Support Bn
Support Bn
Resting Bn GOVY
Resting Bn
Resting Bn RAVINE Jn
Resting Bn ?
Resting Bn

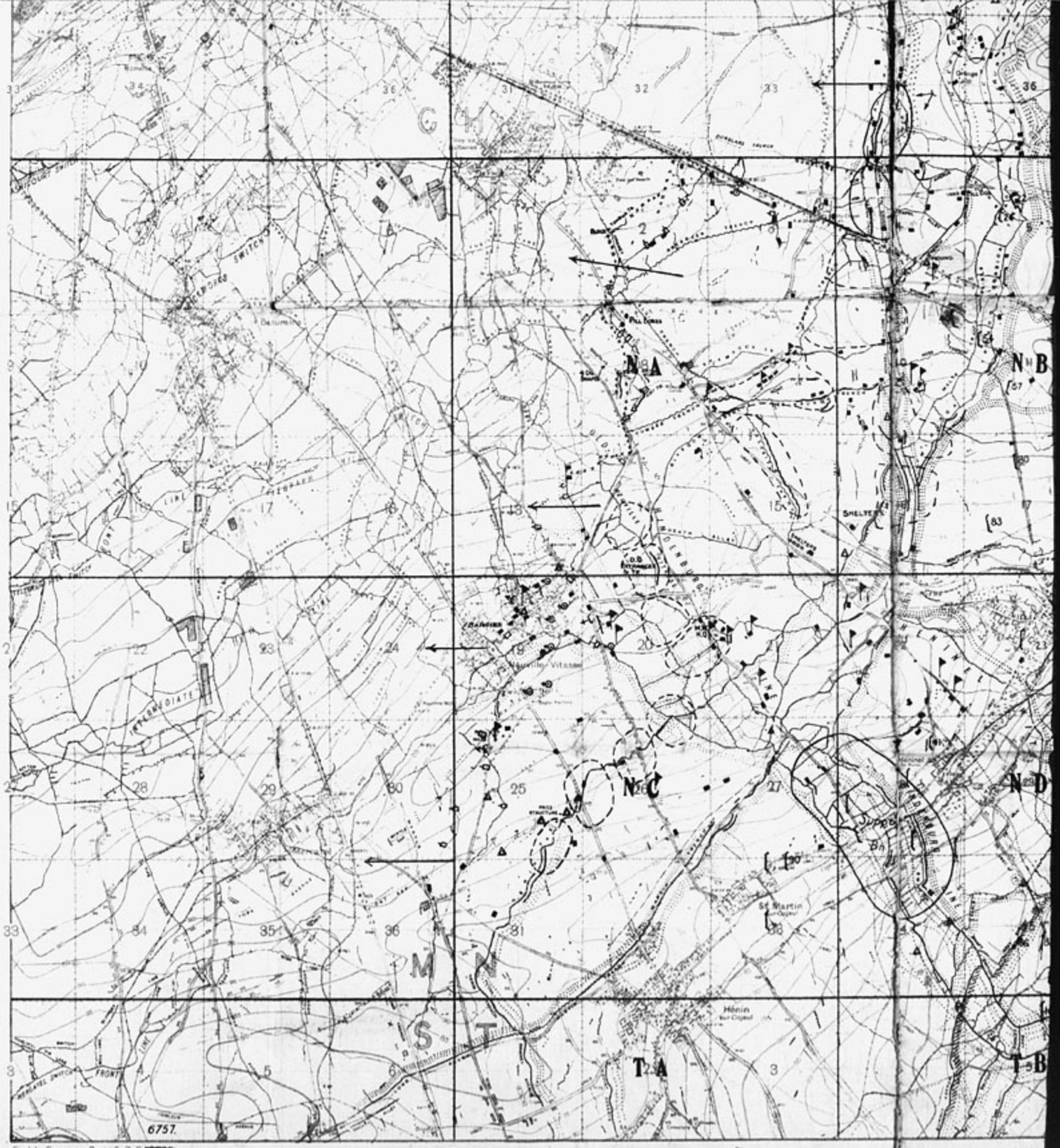
Observation Posts ... ...
Huts and Shelters ... ...
Small Areas of Movement ... ...

INTELLIGENCE LOG TARGET MAP.

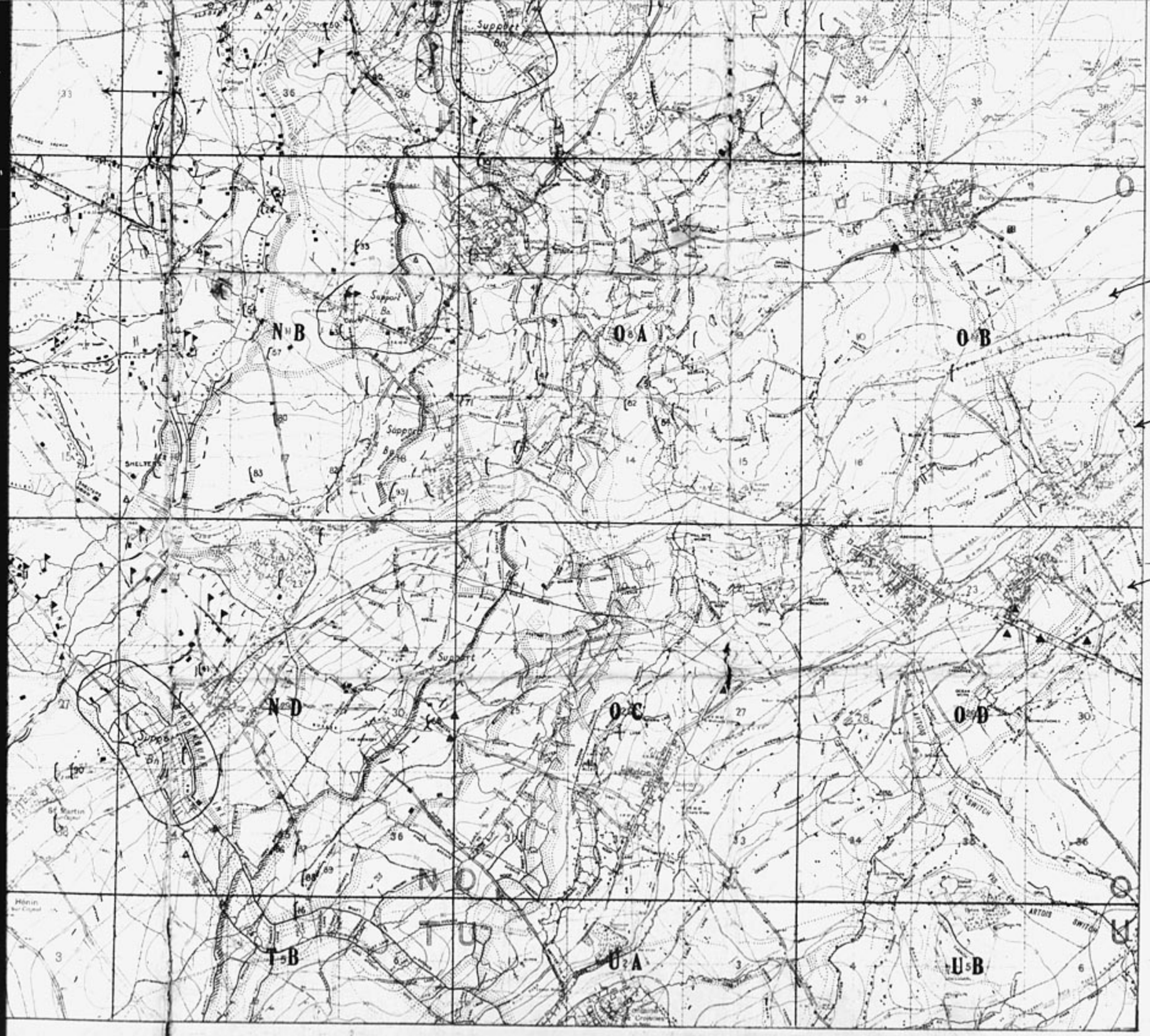
Information to 20-8-18.

REFERENCE.

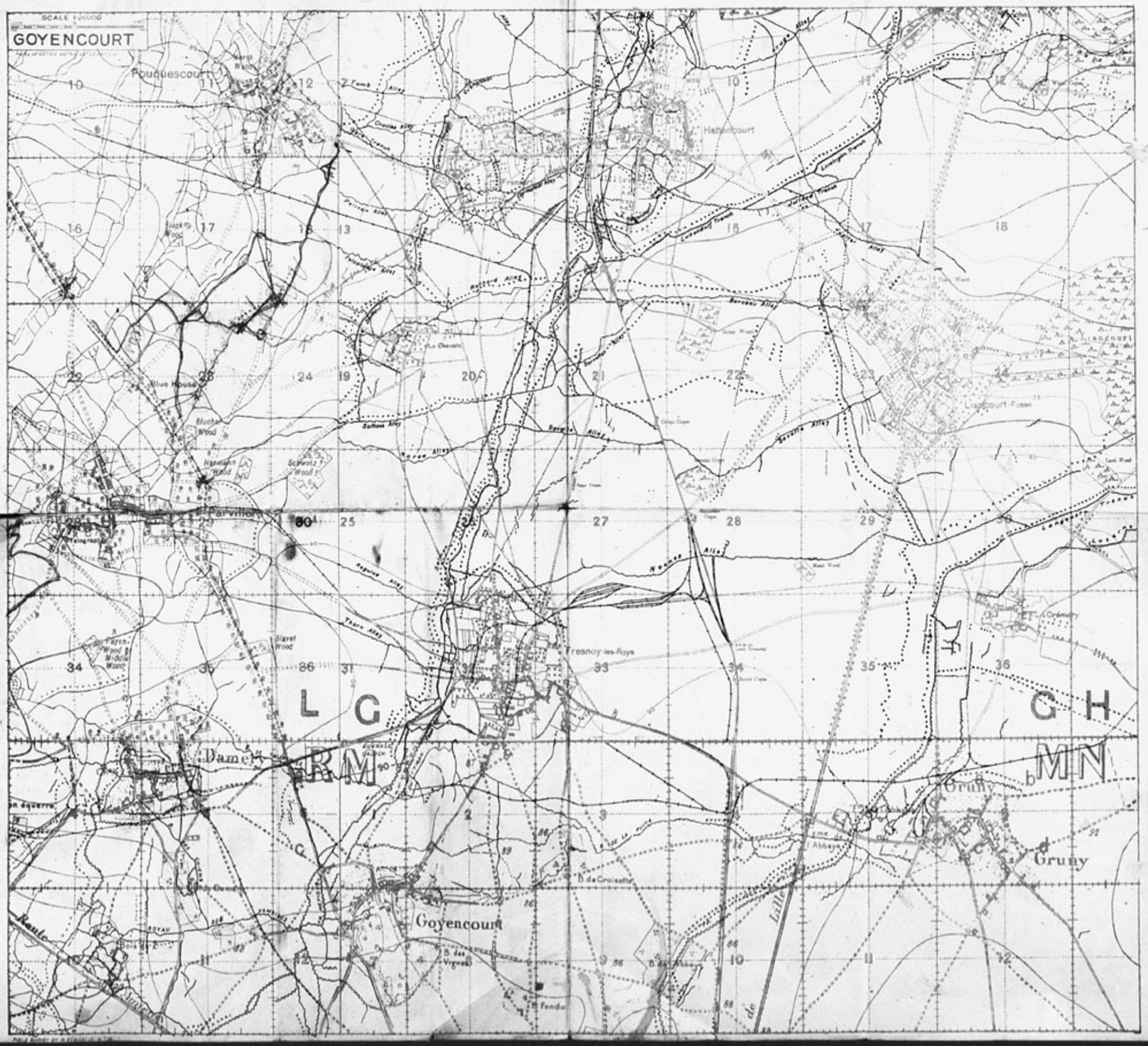
Trenches Occupied ...
Probable Line of Resistance ...
Posts ...
Machine Guns ...
Trench Mortars ...
Observation Posts ...
~~Strong Shelters~~ ...
Headquarters ...
Dumps ...
Dressing Stations ...
Bridges ...
Active Battery Positions ...
Company ... Suspected ...



Field Survey Batt^n R.E. ~~6735~~


RAVINE J30.31
Support Bn
Support Bn
Support Bn
Support Bn
Support
Support Bn
SHELTER
N B
O A
O B
N D
O C
O D
T B
U A
U B
Resting Bn.
?
Resting Bn.
DURY
Scale 2000

~~GAMLPAI~~
ROHD -


SCALE 1:20000
GOYENCOURT
Pouquescourt
Hallencourt
Blue House
Blucher Wood
Hangman Wood
Schwartz Wood
Parvillers
Fresnoy-les-Roye
Damery
Goyencourt
Gruny
Lignières
Lignières-Fosse
L G
R M
G H
M N

GOYENCOURT.

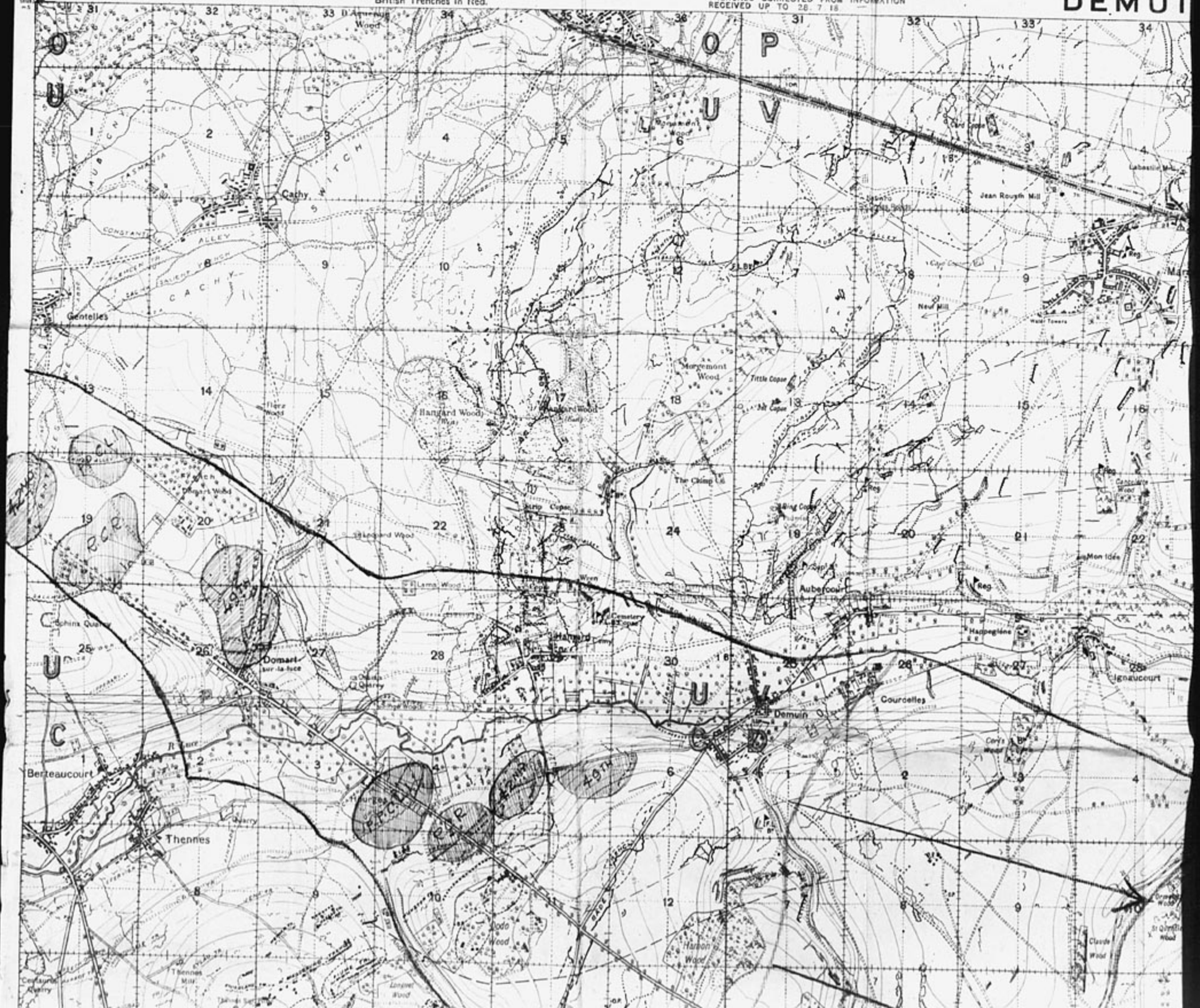
12

1:20,000

NOTE CHANGE OF COLOUR.
Enemy Trenches in Blue.
British Trenches in Red.

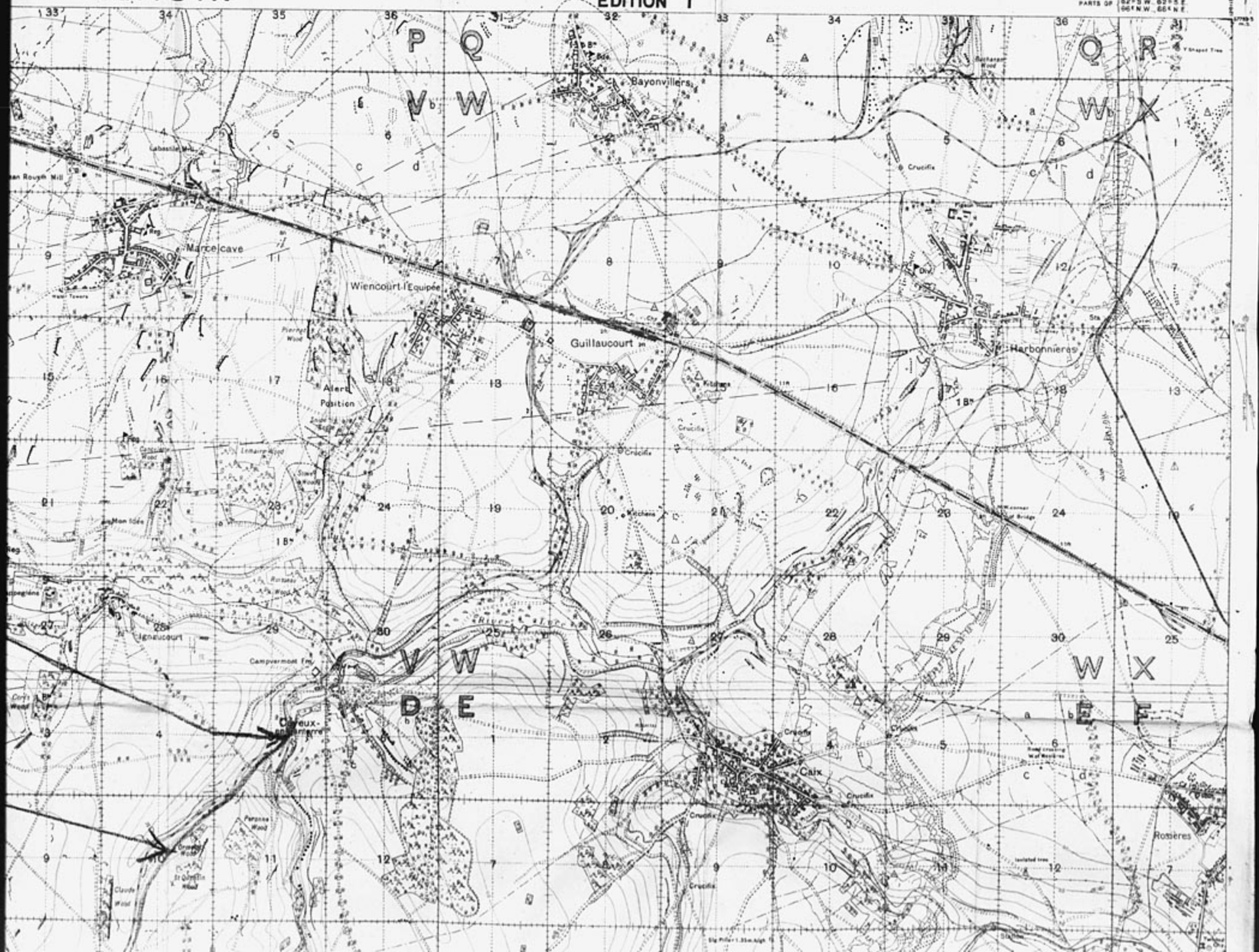
TRENCHES CORRECTED FROM INFORMATION RECEIVED UP TO 28. 7. 16.

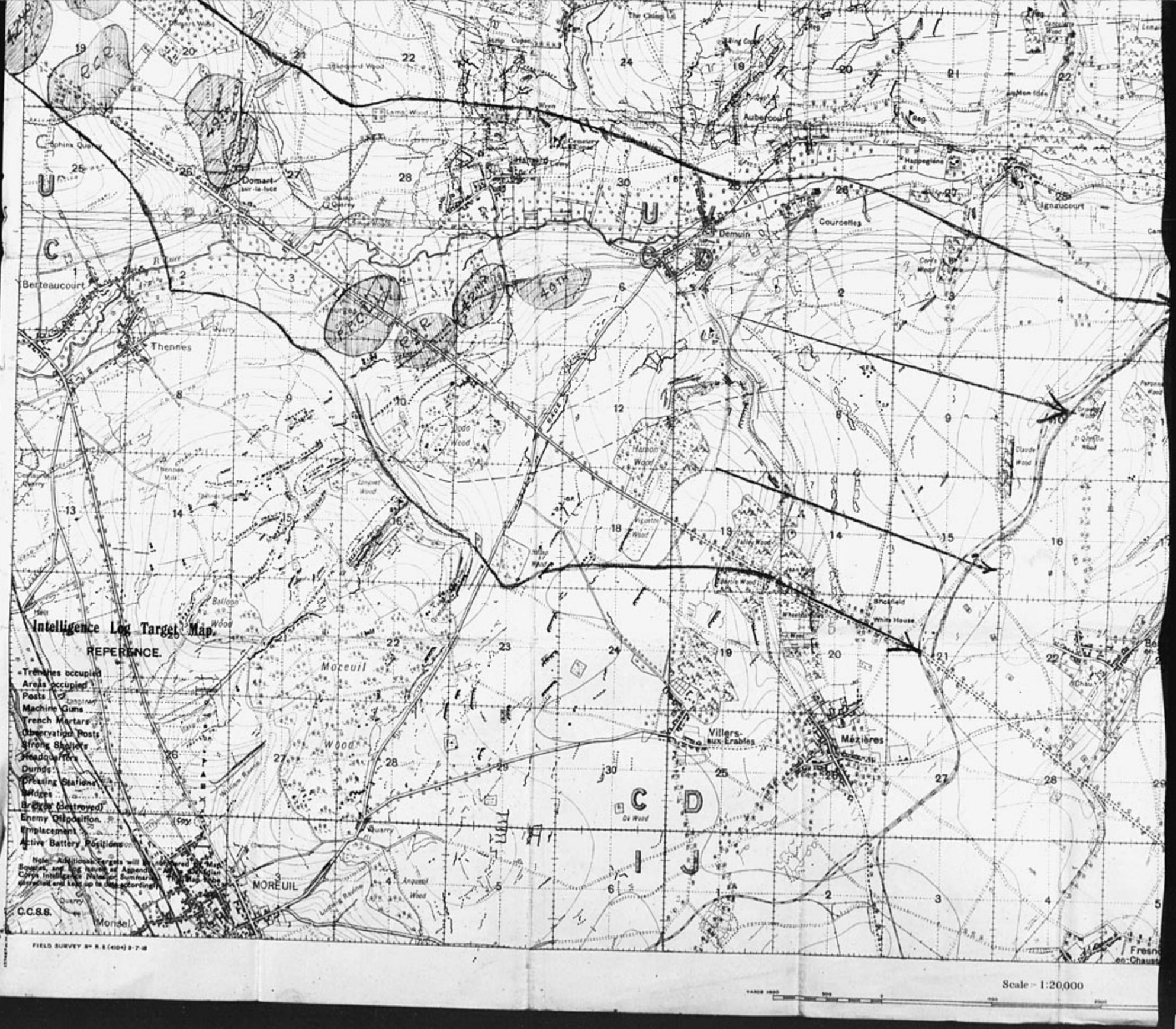
DEMUI

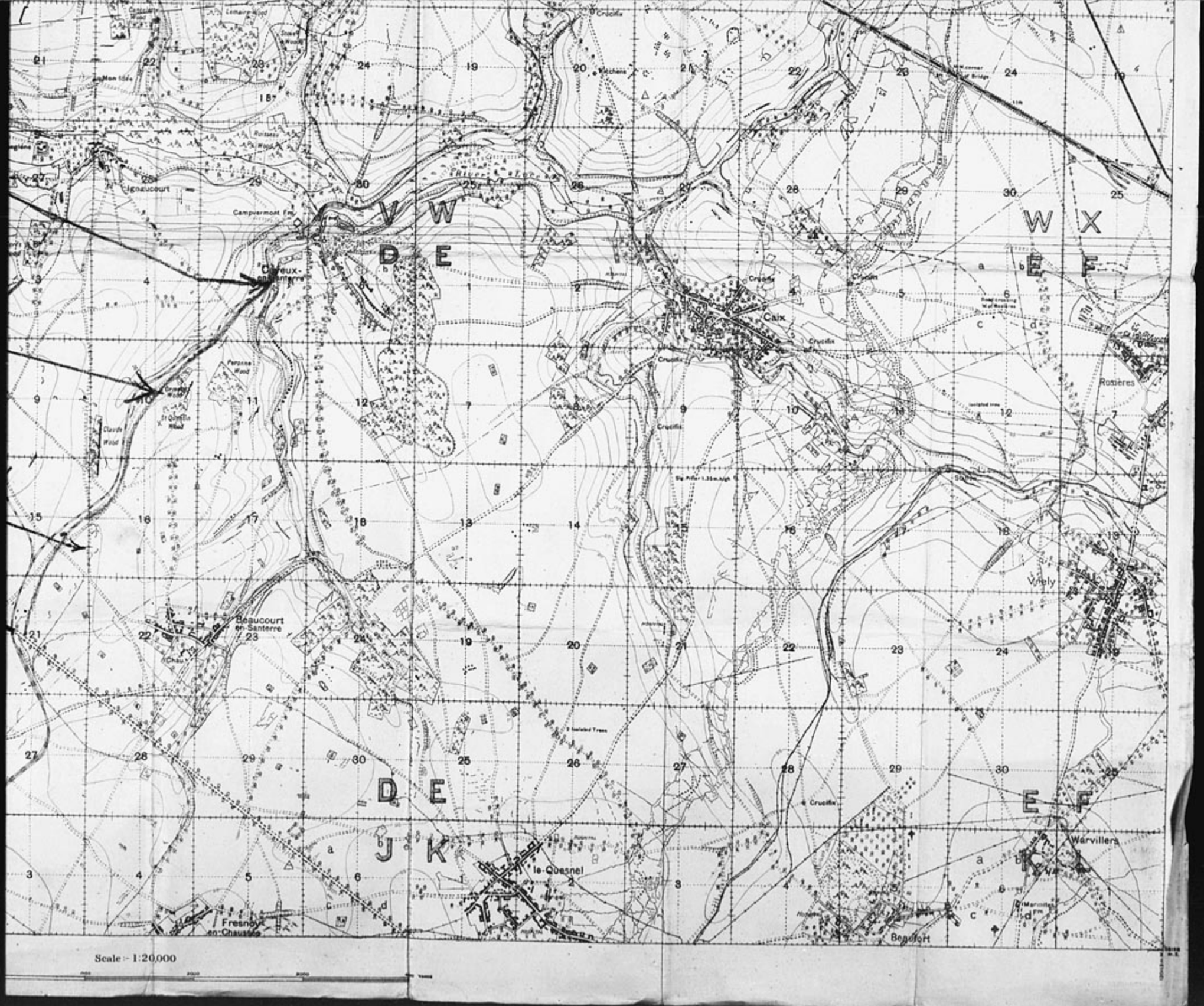


DEMUIN

EDITION I




Intelligence Log Target Map.
REFERENCE.
Trenches occupied
Areas occupied
Posts
Machine Guns
Trench Mortars
Observation Posts
Strong Shelters
Headquarters
Dumps
Dressing Stations
Bridges
Bridges (destroyed)
Enemy Disposition.
Emplacement
Active Battery Positions
Note:- Additional Targets will be entered on Map Squares, and log issues as Appendix of the Canadian Corps Intelligence Notes and Summaries. The Map will be corrected and kept up to date accordingly.
C.C.S.S.
FIELD SURVEY Br R.E. (4104) 8-7-18
Berteaucourt
Thennes
Domart sur-la-luce
Demuin
Courcelles
Ignaucourt
Aubercourt
Moreuil
Wood
MOREUIL
Villers-aux-Erables
Mézières
Fresnoy-en-Chaussée
Scale - 1:20,000


Caix
Rosières
Vrely
Beaucourt en-Santerre
le-Quesnel
Warvillers
Fresnoy en-Chaussée
Beaufort
Scale - 1:20,000

DEMUIN.

WAR
DIARY.

CONFIDENTIAL

WAR DIARY.

-------ooo-------

-:- OF -:-

42nd CANADIAN BATTALION — 3rd CANADIAN DIVISION

FROM 1st Sep TO 30th Sep 1918

-------ooo-------

VOLUME 36

with appendix
1 – 11.

WAR DIARY

42nd Canadian Battalion 3rd Cdn. Division,

From 1st to 30th September 1918.

Volume 18-9

Diary Text		9 Pages.
Appendix I.		Orders issued by 42nd Cdn. Bn. dated 4-9-18 to 26-9-18.
"	2 & 3	Reports issued by 42nd Cdn. Bn. from 18-9-18 to 12-9-18
"	4	Orders issued to 42nd Cdn. Bn. dated 25-9-18
"	5	Congratulatory message issued to 42nd Cdn. Bn. dated 17-8-18.
"	6	Narrative of operations 42nd Cdn. Bn. dated 25-9-18 to 30-9-18.
"	7 to 11	Maps.

1-11.

36

ORIGINAL

CONFIDENTIAL

WAR DIARY

SEPTEMBER 1918.

42nd CANADIAN BATTALION

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY 42nd. Cdn. Battalion, R. H. C.
or
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.
(Erase heading not required.)

Army Form C. 2118.

Place 1918	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
SEPTEMBER	1ST.		The Battalion left ARRAS at 9. am. and proceeded by route march to billets at HERMAVILLE, about nine miles west of ARRAS.	
	2ND.		General training was commenced. Special classes for the training of Lewis Gunners Scouts, Snipers, N.C.Os. etc. were organised and got under way. About 11. am. orders were received to be ready to move in one hour's notice. Training was stopped and arrangements were immediately made to evacuate billets. About 3 pm. we received orders to move to the Cemetery Area, just East of ARRAS. Advance parties were hurriedly sent off and the Battalion left HERMAVILLE at 4 pm., arriving in the new area just at dusk. Great difficulty was experienced in finding accommodation. A few of the personnel succeeded in finding some cover in portions of old disused trenches and in shell holes, but the great majority of the Battalion were forced to lie out in the open for the night. Major E. R. Pease, D.S.O. returned from a month's course at the 3rd. Army School.	
	3RD		On the morning of the 3rd. search of the area was made and a certain amount of accommodation was secured. Some dugouts were found along the Eastern edge of the cemetery, and with tents and bivouacs the whole Battalion was got under cover. Early in the afternoon orders were received from Brigade that the Canadian Corps was continuing its operations and that in all probability the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade would move on the 4th September from the cemetery area to the area about VIS-EN-ARTOIS, and that on the following day they would relieve a Brigade of the 4th Division in the line. Reconnaissance parties under the Battalion Scout Officer were sent forward at once. Lieut. A. S. Burke, one of the party, was slightly wounded by shrapnel in the arm and evacuated to hospital.	
	4TH.		On the morning of the 4th orders were received to relieve the 58th Battalion in the VIS-EN-ARTOIS Area. Companies set out by 3.30pm. and moved up independently, arriving in the new area about 6 pm. and bivouaced in the open for the night. Lieut. A. Fleming was severely wounded on the Cemetery Road about noon by an enemy shell. He was immediately attended to by the M.O. and sent through to the Field Ambulance. Lieut. Fleming joined the Battalion in March, 1917. Since that time he had successively carried on as Platoon Commander, Lewis Gun Officer, Bombing Officer and	

D. D. & L., London, E.C.
(A1006) Wt W5300/P793 750,000 4/17 Sch. 52 Forms/C2118/16

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY 42nd. Cdn. Battalion, R. H. C.

Sheet 2.

INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(Erase heading not required.)

Army Form C. 2118.

Place	Date 1918	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
SEPTEMBER	4TH		Cont. Intelligence Officer, and in all capacities his work was always of the highest order.	
	5TH.		On the morning of the 5th orders were received that the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade would relieve the 11th Canadian Infantry Brigade in the line on the night 5th/6th September. Boundaries of Brigade Sector, South- X. 6 central - W. 6 central. Cross Roads at W. d. 5.8. along railway to Canal at Q. 34 b. 8.0 - W. 7. a. 0. 2. - P. 31. a. 0., North-from Q. 23 a. 9.7. along road inclusive to the HERMAVILLE RIVER, thence along river to P. 21. d. 9.0., thence along track to P. 34. a. 6.0. and West along grid line through P. 33 a. and P. 32 central. The 49th Canadian Battalion (E. R.) were to relieve in the outpost line, the R. C. R. the line of resistence and the 42nd. Battalion in Brigade Support, with the P. P. C. L. I. in Brigade Reserve. Advance Parties were immediately sent forward and areas allotted to Companies. The Battalion moved in the afternoon, arriving in the new area at about 6. 30pm. This was situated West of CAGNICOURT and South of the ARRAS-CAMBRAI Road. A. B. and C Companies were distributed in parts of the BUISSEY SWITCH Line; D Company in the Communication Trench running from the BUISSEY SWITCH towards CAGNICOURT, and Battalion Headquarters in old gun pits at approximately P. 33 d. 30. 50.	
	6-7-8TH		The Battalion remained in Brigade Support. Captain E. B. Finley, M.C., Captain C. S. Martin, M.C. and Lieuts. W. C. Baber, H. C. Baldwin, H. Everett, R. W. P. Hawkes, J. R. Hubbard, P. P. Hutchison, B. C. Salter and J. W. Cave reported and were taken on the strength of the Battalion. During these three days parties of officers and O. R. were sent forward to reconnoitre the outpost line and main line of resistence in the SAUCHY-CAUCHY, and to get familiar with the Forward Areas.	
	9TH		On the morning of the 9th orders were received that the Battalion would relieve the 49th Canadian Battalion (E. R.) in the Outpost Line opposite SAUCHY-CAUCHY. The Battalion commenced to move about 7. O'Clock by overland route across the ARRAS-CAMBRAI Road and towards HAMAUCOURT. Guides from the 49th Battalion were picked up near their Headquarters. A and B Companies took over the Outpost Observation Line, A Company on the right, B Company on the left. C Company was in support and D Company in Reserve in	

D. D. & L., London, E.C.
(A1008) Wt W3300/P793 750,000 4/18 Sch. 52 Forms/C2118/1

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY
Sheet 3

INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(Erase heading not required.)

42nd Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

Army Form C. 2118.

Place 1918	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
SEPTEMBER	9TH	Cont.	OSVILLERS FARM. Relief was completed about 12.20am. The night was wet and pitch black and it was consequently impossible to get exact dispositions.	
	10TH		At 1.20am. on the morning of the 10th our Outpost in the BRICK KILN in SAUCHY-CAUCHY was attacked by a party of the enemy. This attack was repulsed and the enemy were forced to withdraw to the CANAL DU NORD. The front line and support Companies were all disposed on the reverse slope facing the CANAL DU NORD. As this slope was in direct observation from the enemy, movement by day was impossible, even the slightest bit of movement drawing artillery and machine gun fire. At dusk on the night of the 10th the enemy again attacked our position opposite the BRICK KILN and after expending our supply of bombs and ammunition our garrison was forced to withdraw. (A report on this attack is appended). In addition to the attack on the BRICK KILN a party of the enemy also attempted to capture our post at MILL CORSE at approximately S.23.a.0.3. Some hand grenades were exchanged but the enemy was driven off and he retired towards the Canal. A post was pushed out and established at approximately S.23.a.3.0. and a further post at the Southern end of the Copse in S.22.d.9.8. The area between OSVILLERS FARM and Battalion Headquarters was heavily shelled during the night with 77.mm., 4.1s and 5.9s. but no casualties were suffered.	
	11TH.		On the 11th plans were prepared to carry out a minor operation after dusk with the intention of driving the enemy out of SAUCHY-CAUCHY and to establish three posts on the Western bank of the Canal at approximately Q.28.d.5.0. [redacted] Bridgehead at Q.34.b.4.7. and at Q.34.b.2.0. Arrangements were made with the Medium Trench Mortars to fire 15 rounds into the BRICK KILN and to cease fire as soon as the barrage opened, and with the Artillery to place a barrage of 18 pounders on the S.O.S. line on the Brigade frontage and to shoot up selected targets with 4.5 Hows. The barrage opened about 9.30pm. Posts were pushed out and established according to plan but on account of lack of time owing to relief we were unable to mop up the BRICK KILN (A full report on this operation is appended). Immediately after the operation was completed the Battalion was relieved by the 1st. C.M.R. Battalion; relief was completed about 3 am., and the Battalion moved back into the Cave in O.29.b. East of VIS-EN-ARTOIS. Our casualties for the tour were 3 OR KILLED 24 OR WOUNDED	

D. D. & L., London, E.C.
(A1006) Wt W5300/P793 750,000 4/18 Sch. 52 Forms/C2118/6

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. Sheet 4

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY~~

(Erase heading not required.)

Army Form C. 2118.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
1918 SEPTEMBER	11th		On the afternoon of the 11th Brig. Gen. H.M. Dyer, CMG., DSO. called at Battalion Headquarters to bid goodbye to the Battalion before leaving for England to take command of the Reserve Depot at Seaford. The departure of Gen. Dyer from the 7th Can. Inf. Brigade occasioned the most widespread and sincere regret. Not only had his leadership won the admiration of the men and officers under his command, but his personality had endeared him to all who knew him. His sound and balanced judgement - his sure appreciation of a military situation - together with his keen sense of the supreme value of human life made him a leader in whom we were able to impose implicit trust, while his genial and kindly spirit - his deep interest in the life of his men and his personal gallantry in action won for him, in the affectionate admiration of all, an endearing place.	
			Lieut. Col. J. A. Clark DSO., O.C 72nd. Battalion, Seaforth Highlanders, took over the Brigade. Col. Clark comes with a fine record of service and we feel confident that the Brigade will achieve further successes under his leadership.	
	12th/18th.		The Battalion remained in Divisional Reserve and during these six days was billeted in the Cave. This cave was tunnelled out of the chalk, had about 60 feet of cover and ample accommodation for a Battalion. Owing to its depth it was very damp and generally very depressing. The entrances opened on to the highest part of the ground and were in full view of the enemy. On account of this movement on the surface was placed out of bounds. A certain amount of training, however, was carried on. Companies dribbled out in small parties and moved down into the valley East of CHERISY, where they assembled and carried on with some general training. Specialist classes for Lewis Gunners and Scouts were also carried on daily and a large amount of salvage was collected by small parties which were well distributed over the whole area. During the six days in the Cave 78 OR reinforcements reported to the Battalion.	
			12th. On the 12th Lieut. G. L. Ogilvie, who had been attached to Brigade for some months, proceeded to England as Orderly Officer to Brig. Gen. Dyer.	
			13th. Major-Gen. L. J. Lipsett, C.B. CMG., on leaving the 3rd. Canadian Division to take command of the 4th Imperial Division, visited the Battalion to say goodbye to the Officers and N.C.Os. Gen. Lipsett has been in command of the 3rd. Canadian Division for over two years and his loss will be keenly felt by all ranks.	
			15th The undermentioned decorations appeared in Divisional Orders on this date. These decorations were awarded to O.R. for their work North of AMIENS August 8th and at PARVILLERS August 12th.	

D. D. & L., London, E.C.
(A1008) Wt W3200/P793 750,000 2/18 Sch. 52 Forms/C2118/16

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

Sheet 5

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY~~

(Erase heading not required.)

Army Form C. 2118.

Place 1918	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
SEPTEMBER	12/18TH Cont.		15th. Cont.	

BAR TO THE MILITARY MEDAL

145373 CSM. J. T. Lush, MM. 132028 CSM. E. W. Hopkins, MM. 441043 Sgt. J. A. Vogel, MM.

MILITARY MEDAL

193293	A/Cpl. E.M.	McKenzie,	418443	Sgt. J.	Ferguson,	132421	Pte.	R. E. Stapley,
3080074	Pte. G.H.	Gray,	2075466	Pte. J.J.	Andrews,	418116	Cpl.	K.L. McMillan,
192813	" T.	Murphy,	408143	Cpl. M.M.	Lippingwell,	132430	Pte.	A. Yeadall,
478993	A/C. C.	Oakes,	193246	" J.D.	Little,	192550	Sgt.	K. Matthews
901631	Cpl. H. P.	Fraser,	132205	Pte. G.	Rose,	133269	Sgt.	J. Grevy,
144759	Pte. A.	Grimmond,	132897	Sgt. W. E.	Reed,	441001	Sgt.	G. W. Thompson,
2075470	" A.	MacLean,	478995	" J. S.	Brown,	132865	Pte.	W. Baker,
3030241	" S. N.	Greenlaw,	748371	Cpl. W. P.	Adams,	408036	Sgt.	A. R. McEwan,

19TH.

On the 19th the 7th Brigade moved to the BERNEVILLE-DAINVILLE Area West of ARRAS. The Battalion left the cave by small parties in the morning and assembled at the Transport Lines near CHERISY where dinner was served. About four O'Clock in the afternoon we moved by route march to CROISILLES where we entrained. We left CROISILLES at 6 O'clock and were much interested in passing through, on a broad gauge railway, the German trenches and No-mans-land in the NEUVILLE VITASSE and MERCATEL Sectors which we had held during the month of July. We detrained at DAINVILLE at dusk and marched into the town where we occupied billets.

20th-25th /

The Battalion was in rest at DAINVILLE. Intensive training was carried on during this period including general training, range and field practices, and specialists classes for Lewis Gunners, Scouts, Junior N.C.Os. Signallers etc.

On the 25th Lieut. E. G. Shepherd reported to the Battalion and was taken on strength.

26th-30th

A full report of the move from DAINVILLE to the Concentration Area and subsequent Operations is attached.

On the early morning of the 29th, while marching to the Assembly Area east of RAILLENCOURT, Lieut. W. Molson was severely wounded by shell fire. During the attack on the morning of the 29th Captain C. S. Martin, MC. was instantly killed by enemy machine gun fire while leading a party against an hostile machine gun. Captain Martin joined the Battalion

D. D. & L., London, E.C.
(A1008) Wt W3300/P793 750,000 1/18 Sch. 52 Forms/C2118/6

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY

Sheet 6

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

Army Form C. 2118.

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY~~

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
1918 SEPTEMBER	26th /30th			

in June 1916, won the Military Cross for a daring raid on New Year's morning 1917, and was wounded at PASSCHENDAELE, the later part of October, 1917. He had only returned to France a few weeks previous to his death. Lieuts. D. B. Gilmour and T. West were also killed during the attack on the morning of the 29th. Both these officers were stricken down by enemy machine gun fire while bravely leading their Companies to the attack on the Railway Embankment North of CAMBRAI. Lieut. F. D. P. Hawkes was also killed during this engagement. This officer was an old N.C.O. and an original member of the Battalion and had just rejoined the Battalion prior to this engagement.

Casualties for the month were:-

	KILLED	WOUNDED	MISSING
OFFICERS:	Captain C. S. Martin, MC	Lieut. J. A. P. Haydon, (at duty)	
	Lieut. D. B. Gilmour,	" A. Fleming,	
	" J. R. Hubbard,	" A. P. Burke,	
	" F. D. P. Hawkes,	Captain H. B. Trout,	
	" T. West,	Major E. R. Pease, DSO	
	"	" C. B. Topp, MC	
		Lieut. W. Molson,	
		" M. K. Craig,	
		" W. G. Scott,	
		" B. C. Salter,	
		" C. L. Smart,	
		" B. C. Hutchison,	
OTHER RANKS	57	260	3

Notification of the award of decorations to OR as under for their work during the Operations at MONCHY le PREUX and DOIRY Notre Dame appeared in Divisional Routine Orders of the 27th inst:-

BAR TO MILITARY MEDAL

480034 Cpl. Ward, MM. H.J. 13224 Sgt. Smith, MM. G 126960 Pte. Lambier, MM. F.

D. D. & L., London, E.C.
(A1006) Wt W3300/P703 750,000 4/18 Sch. 52 Forms/C2118/6

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.
Sheet 7
~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.~~
(Erase heading not required.)

Army Form C. 2118.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
1918				
SEPTEMBER	26th /30th.		The MILITARY MEDAL 283115 Pte. Taylor, A. W. — 164209 Pte. Walters, E. — 133210 Pte. Mackay, A. S. 478867 L/Sgt. Sutton, A. — 840030 L/C Giles, R. A. — 902249 " Kidy, J. 192980 L/C. Asoin, J. D. — 288898 Pte. Hamilton, J. S. — 132285 " Glen, A. 754717 Pte. O'Brien, E. — 132286 L/Sgt. Ferguson, A. — 478472 Sgt. Fetterly, O. J. 901985 L/C Kennedy, A. D. — 478423 Pte Craig, J. E. — 204085 Pte. Brown, A. 919248 Pte. Stapley, D. G. — 132731 " Doherty, J. — 814923 " Hobbs, W. 192571 " McNeill, A. — 754677 A/Cpl. McPhee, W. J. — 133222 L/C Wager, J. 163488 L/C Hicks, W. — 408130 L/Sgt. King, A. The following congratulatory messages were received:- FROM / Lieutenant-General Sir Arthur W. Currie, K.C.B., K.C.M.G., Gndg. Canadian Corps. "I most cordially congratulate the 3rd. Canadian Division for the splendidly successful fighting they have done in the last four days AAA They have shown fighting qualities of the highest order." FROM / Major-General F.O.W. Loomis, C.B., C.M.G., D.S.O., Gndg. 3rd. Cdn. Division "I wish to express my appreciation of the work done by the different units of the Division, and by the Formations co-operating with us, during the past four days fighting. The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade under Brig.-General J. A. CLARKE, DSO. and the 9th Canadian Infantry Brigade under Brig-General D.M.ORMOND, DSO., have maintained their organization through difficult and sustained fighting. The work of the 116th Canadian Infantry Battalion has been especially fine. The 8th Canadian Infantry Brigade had demonstrated to a marked extend the valuable qualities of patience and care of details while supporting attacks and making them. The 3rd. Canadian Divisional Artillery, the 5th Canadian Divisional Artillery, the 8th Army Brigade, C.F.A. and 8th Brigade R.G.A., all	

D. D. & L., London, E.C.
(A1008) Wt W3300/P713 750,000 4/18 Sch. 52 Forms/C2118/16

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY 42nd. Canadian Battalion,
Sheet 8
~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY~~.
(Erase heading not required.)

Army Form C. 2118.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
SEPTEMBER 1918	26th /30th Cont.		under the Command of Brig-General J. S. STEWART, DSO., C.R.A. have supported the Infantry splendidly, forward sections have done especially well. The gallant work of the Battalion Commanders and their Officers, the Brigade Commanders and their Staffs, the Divisional Staff, and the Division Signals, and the organization and Team work of the Division as a whole, the maintenance of supplies and communications throughout the prolonged fight have impressed me profoundly, and have aroused my deep admiration. The Division has been successful. My congratulations and thanks to all ranks." 2. 10. 18. FROM / Brig-General J. A. CLARK, D.S.O., Cmdg. 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade, "I wish to express my appreciation of the fighting qualities displayed by all Units of the Brigade during the recent operation. The cheerful manner in which Commanding Officers accepted new tasks, and the untiring efforts of all ranks to accomplish them, was most gratifying. In four attacks the Brigade defeated eleven enemy Regiments, and succeeded in taking many strong positions against overwhelming odds. My one conclusion is that no officer has ever had finer troops to command. You have all suffered most regrettable casualties. I trust that the memory of the fallen may inspire us all with fresh determination to avenge our losses when opportunity offers, and to exert ourselves to maintain the fine fighting spirit which has won for this Brigade it's enviable record." 4. 10. 18.	

D. D. & L., London, E.C.
(A1006) Wt W3300/P713 750,000 2/18 Sch. 52 Forms/C2118/16

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY 42nd. Cdn. Battalion, R.H.C.

Sheet 9

INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(Erase heading not required.)

Army Form C. 2118.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
SEPTEMBER 1918	26th/30th Cont.		Prior to leaving the Division Major-General L. J. Lipsett, C.B., C.M.G., issued the following Special Order:-	
			"I am leaving the Division after Commanding it for 2 years and 3 months. During that time I have always felt the greatest pride and confidence in my Command, and this confidence I think was fully justified. I want to thank all the Officers, N.C.Os. and Men for the loyal and cheerful support which they have always given, and which has made my command so easy and pleasant. I feel that I am leaving good comrades and good friends, and I do so with the deepest regret. I wish you all the best of luck for the future."	
			The death of Lieut. Col. C. J. S. Stewart, D.S.O., Officer Commanding the P.P.C.L.I., who was killed in action on September 28th, has made a gap in the Brigade almost impossible to fill. He was a most gallant gentleman who had won the honor and love of the whole Brigade. As a soldier he had gained an enviable reputation for intrepid courage, resourceful leadership and untiring devotion to the service. The 42nd. Battalion will continue to hold in honour the memory of a man who had a warm friendship for our Regiment, and whose life was an example of those qualities which make a true soldier.	

Lieut. Colonel,
Comdg. 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.

(A9475) Wt W4358/P360 600,000 12/17 D. D. & L. Sch. 52a. Forms/C2118/13.

SECRET

OPERATION ORDER NO. 206 by
Major R. L. H. Ewing, DSO. MC
Cmdg. 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.
SEPTEMBER 4TH, 1918.

1. INFORMATION

The 9th Cdn. Inf. Brigade will relieve a portion of the 4th Canadian Division in the Line on the night 4th/5th Sept.

The 7th Cdn. Inf. Brigade will relieve the remainder on the night 5th/6th September.

Inter-Divisional Boundaries as follows:-

SOUTH BOUNDARY - X. 6. central - W. 6. central - Cross roads at W. 5. d. 7. 8. - along Railway (to right Div.) to Canal at Q. 3. c. 8. 0. W. 7. a. 0. 2 - P. 31. c. 0. 0.

NORTH BOUNDARY - Q. 5. central. Q. 10. central - Q. 13. central. P. 23. b. 3. 7. - cross roads at L'ESPERANCE FARM - P. 26. d. 1. 3.

BRIGADE & BATTALION Boundaries to be notified later.

In accordance with the above the 7th Cdn. Infantry Brigade will move to VIS-en-ARTOIS Area on the afternoon 4th September relieving the 9th Cdn. Inf. Brigade.

2. INTENTION

The 42nd. Canadian Bn. R.H.C. will relieve the 58th Canadian Bn. R.H.C. in the VIS-en-ARTOIS Area in the afternoon of the 4th September.

3. ORDER OF MARCH

Companies will move up independently and will leave present area as soon after 3.30pm. as possible.

4. ROUTE

via ST. LAURENT-BLANGY - TILLOY Road to ARRAS-CAMBRAI Road, thence along Dry Weather Route alongside CAMBRAI Road to VIS-en-ARTOIS.

5. ADVANCE PARTIES & GUIDES

As already detailed.

6. TRANSPORT

Lewis Gun limbers and kitchens will move with their Companies, remainder of transport will move in rear of the Battalion.

7. BAGGAGE

Officers Trench Kits etc. will be taken forward on Lewis Gun limbers.

J. M. MACLEOD
Captain/Adjutant.

7th C.I.Brigade
Copies to O.C. 2 i/c Adjt.
QM. TO. MO. O. Cs. Companies
Scout O Sig. O. RSM.

SECRET

OPERATION ORDER NO.207
BY
MAJOR R.L.H.EWING D.S.O. M.C.
CMDG.42nd.CANADIAN BATTALION. R.H.C.

SEPTEMBER 5th.1918

1
INFORMATION — The 7th.Cdn.Inf.Brigade will relieve the 11th.Cdn Inf.Brigade in the line night 5th/6th September.

Boundaries of Brig de sector will be as follows:-

SOUTH — X.6.central- W.6.central-Cross Roads at W.5.d.7.8. along Railway (to right Division) to Canal at P.34.c.8.0. - W.7.a.0.2. - P.31.a.0.0.

NORTH — Q.23.a.5.7. along Road inclusive to NIRONDELLE RIVER thence along River to P.23.d.9.0. then along track to P.34.a.6.0. thence WEST along GRID line through P.33. and P.32.central to P.31.central.

2
INTENRION — The 42nd.Canadian Battalion.R.H.C. will move into Brigade support and will occupy the area V.3.and.4. (North of Bourdray) P.33.d.and P.34.C.and.D.(SOUTH of ARRAS-CAMBRAI Road)

3
DISPOSITIONS — Companies will take over areas allotted to advance parties this morning.

4
PARADE — The Battalion will fall in ready to move off at 5.p.m

5
ORDER OF MARCH — Headquarters-A.Coy B.Coy C.Coy D.Coy

Intervals of 200 yds will be maintained between Companies and 50 yds between Platoons.

6
TRANSPORT — Lewis Gun limbers will go forward with their Companies and the Tool Wagon with Headquarters Details.

7
BAGGAGE — Officers Trench Kits etc.will be taken forward on Lewis Gun limbers.

8
RATIONS & WATER — Will be sent on later in the afternoon.

9
BATTN.HQRS. — on completion of relief will be at approx.P.33.d.30.50.

10
REPORTS — Completion of relief will be reported to Bn.HQ.by runner.

Copies to 7th.Cdn.Inf.Bde.
Adjutant
O.Cs.A.B.C.D.Coys
HQ.Mess
Q.M. T.O.

J.D.MACLEOD
Capt.Adjt.

SECRET

OPERATION ORDER NO. 208
by Major R.L.H.Ewing, D.S.O., M.C.
Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.
Ref. Map - 51.b.S.E. 1/20,000 September 9th. 1918.

1. The 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. will relieve the 49th. Canadian Battalion (E.R.) in the outpost line opposite SAUCHY-CAUCHY on the night 9th/10th September.

2. Companies of the 42nd Canadian Battalion will relieve corresponding Companies of the 49th. Battalion.

3. Advance parties as already detailed.

4. Guides - 1. O.R. per platoon from the 49th. Battalion and 1 O.R. per platoon from the advance party of the 42nd Battalion will act as joint guides. They will meet the Battalion at end of SUNKEN Road at approximately Q.31. a.90.95.

5. Lewis Guns and discs, bombs, extra bandoliers etc. will be carried in on themen.

6. Rations will be distributed this afternoon and carried in on themen.

7. Water will be delivered to Company Dumps by Transport.

8. One limber will report at Battalion H.Q. at 7.15 pm. to take forward officers Trench kits and mess supplies.

9. All bivvies will be turned over to incoming Battalion and receipt taken.

10. Completion of relief will be reported to Battalion H.Q. by wire by using the code phrase "Your O.O. No. 208 received at ....."

11. On completion of relief Battalion HQ. will be at Q.31.b.80.90.

Sgd. J.D.MacLeod,
Captain Adjt.

Copies to - 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade
49th Battalion (E.R.)
O.C. A.B.C.D Companies.
Q.M.
File.

O. O. 209.

SECRET

42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. Copy No....

Reference Map - Tuesday, September 10th 1918.

51.B. 1/40,000

1.

INFORMATION The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade will be relieved on the night 11th/12th September by elements of 8th Canadian Infantry Brigade.

2.

INTENTION The 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. will be relieved in the Outpost Zone by the 1st C.M.R. Battalion and on completion of relief will move back to the area vacated by the 5th C.M.R. Bn. in O.29.b.

3.

RELIEF Companies of the 1st C.M.R. Battalion will relieve corresponding companies of the 42nd Canadian Bn. R.H.C.

4.

GUIDES 2 per platoon and 2 for Battalion Headquarters will meet incoming Battalion at end of sunken road, about 100 yards West of Battalion Headquarters, at approximately Q.31.a.90.95 They will report to Lieut, A.B.Proven at Battalion H.Q. as soon after 8.15 pm. as possible.

5.

ADVANCE PARTY Advance Party be furnished from rear Details and will be responsible for taking over the area vacated by the 5th C.M.R. Battalion, and for guding in Companies.

6.

TRENCH STORES 30 Water Tins per company and 30 per Headquarters will be handed over to incoming Battalion, Quartermaster will arrange to draw a similar number from relieving Battalion.

All bombs, reserve S.A.A. additional bandoliers, tools aeroplane photos etc. will be handed over as Trench Stores and receipts taken.

Receipts will be at Battn. H.Q. by 9 am. September 12th.

7.

LEWIS GUN LIMBERS Lewis Gun limbers for B and D Cos. will report to Company Ration Dump, and limbers for A and C Cos. at Battalion H.Q. One man per crew will be left in charge of the gun and be responsible for loading.

8.

TRANSPORT A limber will report at Battalion H.Q. by 9.30 pm. for H.Q. officers' trench kits, mess supplies, Orderly Room boxes etc.

Company Officers' baggage will go out on their Lewis Gun limbers.

9.

REPORTS

Companies will report completion of relief by wire to Battalion H.Q. using the code phrase "Your O.O.No. 209 received at.....", and will report completion of move to new Battalion Headquarters at O.29.b.9.2. by runner.

Sgd. J.D.MacLeod,
Captain Adjutant.

Issued at.....

Copy No.1 to H.Q. 7th C.I.B. 3 to O.C. A Coy.

P.T.O.

Distribution con d.

2 to O.C. 1st. C.M.R. Bn.	4 to O.C.	B Coy
	5	C
	6	D
	7	Rear 42nd Bn.H.Q.
	8 to 10	War Diary
	11	File.

REPORT ON ENEMY ATTACK ON BRICK KILN ON THE NIGHT 10TH SEPTEMBER, 1918.

On the night 9th/10th September, 1918, the Battalion relieved the 49th Canadian Battalion, E.R. in the Outpost Line opposite SAUCHY CAUCHY. Outposts taken over from the 49th Can. Battalion are shown in Red on attached map. It was a wet, pitch black night, and Companies were unable to get exact locations of the Outposts which accounted for certain errors in the disposition which was forwarded to Brigade on the morning of the 10th. Relief was completed at 12.20am. and about 1.20am. our position in the BRICK KILN in SAUCHY CAUCHY was attacked by about fifteen to twenty of the enemy. This attack was repulsed and the enemy were forced to withdraw ~~over~~ to the CANAL DU NORD.

At dusk on the night of September 10th the enemy attacked our position in the BRICK KILN in strength, and after hand-to-hand fighting, during which our supply of bombs and ammunition was expended, our garrison was forced to withdraw to a position along the Light Railway in Q.28.c. and Q.34.a. The attack was made by two distinct parties - one making its way up the West bank of the Canal and crawling into gun pits between the Canal and the BRICK KILN, the other working its way along the bed of the Canal under cover and getting an entrance into the sunken road in 28.d. The attack was launched under cover of a very heavy barrage of machine guns and rifle grenades. A large number of flares were put up around the BRICK KILN and cylindrical sticks thrown in through the openings in the Eastern wall.

Another platoon was sent up with supplies of bombs and rifle grenades to reinforce the platoon which had withdrawn to the Light Railway, and an attempt was made to re-occupy the KILN. Owing to intense machine gun fire and the nature of the ground it was impossible to get across open country. The enemy appeared to hold the position in strength and had at least three machine guns in the KILN supported by heavy machine guns on the Eastern edge of the Canal.

Lieut. Colonel,
Cmdg. 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.

13.9.18

14C

3.

Account of operations in vicinity of
SAUCHY CAUCHY Night of 11th/12th
September 1918.

Ref. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. Operation Order
No.210 - 11.9.18.
Reference Map - MILL COPSE.

Personnel engaged.

Three parties participated - No.1 party of two sections under Lieut. West - No.2 party of 1 platoon under Lieut. Hutchison and No.3 party of 2 sections under Lieut. Andrews.

Party No.1 moving from Q.28.d.1.6. was entirely successful and established strong commanding posts at Q.28.d.50.20 and Q.28.d.50.30. The former is our Lewis Gun post and entirely controls the crossing at the BRIDGE at Q.34.b.45.65 Two enemy parties of eight and ten were engaged with bombs and Lewis Guns at the BRIDGE HEAD and driven after a stiff fight into the canal. A number of enemy were seen to fall into the canal. - three of our men were wounded with cylinderical sticks. Other individual movement was seen near the BRIDGE HEAD on the opposite banks and engaged by our fire. The conclusion drawn is that the crossing was held by a strong garrison.

Party No.2 made a frontal attack on the BRICK KILN and attached trench immediately west of BRIDGE HEAD, but met with determined Machine Gun resistence and were unable to mop up the kiln as planned, but kept garrison engaged by fire until parties one and three had made good their posts, when one half platoon established itself ~~West~~ of KILN in the SAUCHY CAUCHY Road and the other half platoon immediately west and behind railway embankment. These two positions entirely cover the north and west of the KILN and the adjoining trenches.

Party No.3 was quite successful moving from Q.34.c.central under heavy enemy artillery and proceeded to Q.34.d.1.9. and Q.34.b.25.30 where strong posts were established. This party did not get into close contact with the enemy but experienced heavy fire and observed considerable enemy movement on opposite bank of canal.

Owing to the lack of time, the need of completing the relief before daylight and the difficulties of communication it was impossible to mop up the enemy remaining in the KILN.

The front on which the operation took place is very much exposed to Machine Gun and sniping from the buildings and emplacements on the rising opposite slope. Ground in immediate vicinity of canal does not lend itself to day posts since cover is very limited and slightest movement impossible

Sheet No. 2.

As nightly positions, posts established with substantial garrisons can be easily maintained and effectively command canal. Details of canal which was carefully reconnoitered by Lieut. Andrews and Lieut. West are attached. BRICK KILN is a very conspicuous position with openings on the enemy side and does not afford protection for any garrison. Present posts however, completely control approaches to and from the KILN.

Casualties one killed and six wounded.

The artillery barrage was very satisfactory and entirely neutralised enemy Machine Guns during the intense period.

The officers of the relieving Company of C.M.R. were taken all over the new positions and the situation thoroughly explained and were quite satisfied with the situation. Major Willcock acting 2 i/c visited the posts on the flank after the relief was complete and personally explained the situation to platoon commanders and N.C.Os. in charge of the various posts. A wire was sent to Brigade giving location of the posts established and a disposition sketch was handed to the 1st C.M.R.

Lt. Col.
Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

NOTES ON CANAL DU NORD.

On the night of the 11th and 12th September two posts in the outpost line of "A" Company were established at Q.28.d.5.2. and Q.26.d.5.3. The latter post was originally established at Q.34.b.35.60 from which point by the aid of flares a view was obtained of the canal in the neighbourhood of the bridge at Q.34.b.5.7. The canal at this point appears to be about 15 feet deep and has a maximum width of 60 feet at the top sloping to 25 feet bed. There is little if any, water in the canal, and much mud on the banks by the water. The banks of the canal have a gradual slope but are in an unfinished state and appear to have been terraced and excavated while there were planks or boards lying on the mud or floating on the water. The bridge was demolished having been broken in the middle when the two halves fell into the ~~mark~~ canal with the bank ends still resting on the abutments. The approach to the east side of the bridge is from a road which is raised at this point. The canal bank has been slightly raised above the general ground level.

T.West, Lieut.
42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.

On the night of September 11th/12. I established a Lewis Gun where the road touches the canal at Q.34.d.10.90 and one about two hundred yards north on the road at approximately Q.34.b.25.30.

A cross section of the canal between these two points is roughly like this -

The road is sunken about 4 - 5 feet. The bottom of the canal where the water is is about thirty feet across. The sides have a fairly steep slope and it is about twenty feet from the top of the bank to the water.

I saw no bridge on crossing but it was pretty dark and I could not see far to the right or left.

There was considerable enemy movement on the opposite bank.

Sgd. Lieut. A.E.Andrews,
42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.

Ref. Map
51B. S.E.
1/20,000

SECRET

48TH CANADIAN BATTALION, R.H.C. COPY NO_____

OPERATION ORDER NO. 215

WEDNESDAY, SEPTEMBER 11TH 19

1.
INFORMATION The enemy are holding the BRICK KILN in SAUCHY CAUCHY and the Bridge heads on the Western Bank of the Canal in 34.b.

2.
INTENTION To drive enemy out of SAUCHY CAUCHY and to establish three posts (with Lewis Guns) on the Western Bank of the Canal at approximately Q.28.d.5.0. - Bridge heads at Q.34.b.4.7. and Q.34.b.2.0.

3.
TASKS (a) 1 Platoon of A Company in position along Railway Embankment astride SAUCHY CAUCHY Road in 28 Central will push forward and make good the BRICK KILN in SAUCHY CAUCHY and occupy it until posts are established in front when they will be withdrawn to former position.

(b) 1 Platoon A Company (less 2 Sections) will move from position in Q.22.d.25.40 and push down the Canal bank, taking up a position near Q.22.d.25.0. where they will establish a post and cut off enemy attempting to cross Bridge head at Q.34.b.40.70.

(c) Right platoon of A Company under Lieut. Andrews will be responsible for establishing two posts of a Section each at 34.b.4.70 and 34.b.2.00 which will be held.

(d) B Company will push forward 1 Section from Platoon in Q.22 Central and occupy post at 22.d.25.40 xxxxxxxx by A Company. vacated

4.
ARTILLERY As per schedule attached.

5.
MEDIUM TRENCH MORTARS At 7.45 pm Medium T.M.s will fire 15 rounds at the BRICK KILN. They will cease firing as soon as barrage opens.

6.
MACHINE GUNS As per arrangements.

7.
MACHINE GUNS Machine Guns will open with Artillery barrage on targets as arranged.

8.
ZERO HOUR will depend on the light and will be advised to the Artillery direct. Code word to open barrage will be "CRASH" Signal to continue Operations will be opening of barrage.

9.
Immediately situation is clear and posts established 1/c posts will send a messenger to report to Major R. Willcock at Q.22 who will then be sent to Company H.Q. to act as guides for the incoming Company.

J.D. Mochers
Captain/Adjutant

Copy No. 1 H.Q. 7th C.I.Bde
2 " 8th Artillery Bde
3 O.C. Divisional French Mortar Battery
4 O.C. 3rd Machine Gun Bn.
4 5 6 7 O.Cs. C.B.C.D. Coys
8 File
9 to 11 War Diary

ARTILLERY BARRAGE

18 Pounders of the th Brigade C.F.A. with 2 Batteries of the 1th Brigade C.F.A. will fire on the S.O.S. Line on the Brigade frontage.

RATE OF FIRE

0 to 0 plus 5		Intense
plus 5 "	plus 8 "	3 rounds per minute
Plus 8 "	plus 11 "	Intense
Plus 11"	plus 20 "	Slow rate and stop.

4.5 Hows' will fire on the following selected targets:-

1 How' on road junction at Q.2.c.30. and will search 30 yds. up road.

1 How' on road junction at Q.35.a.25.68

2 Hows' on road junction at Q.35.a.17.4

2 Hows' on Copse at Q.34.d.90.30

In addition the 4.5 Howitzers will open up at 7.45pm. and xxxx keep a slight harrassing fire on roads and approaches until Zero.

11.9.18

42nd. CANADIAN BATTALION, RHC. SECRET

OPERATION ORDER #212 COPY NO. 14

REF. MAPS / 51.B. 1/40,000 - LENS 11, 1/100,000 WEDNESDAY, SEPTEMBER 18TH, 1918.

1.
INFORMATION The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade will move by train and by march route to the BERNEVILLE-DAINVILLE Area on the 19th September. On arrival in new area the Brigade will come into Corps Reserve.

2.
INTENTION The 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. will move from the Cave in Q 24.b. to billets in DAINVILLE. Entraining at CROISILLES at 3.15pm. and detraining at DAINVILLE.

3.
MOVE FROM CAVE The Battalion will commence to leave the Cave at 9.30am. and will assemble in field near Transport Lines where dinner will be served. The move from the Cave to the Transport Lines will be made by Platoons at five minute intervals - Intervals of twenty minutes will be maintained between Companies.

Companies will commence to leave the Cave at the following hours:

A COMPANY	-	9.30 am.
B "	-	9.50 "
C "	-	10.10 "
D "	-	10.30 "
HEADQUARTERS		10.50 "

4.
PARADE The Battalion will fall in, ready to move off from Transport Lines, at 1.30pm. - Intervals of 100 yards will be maintained between Companies on the march.

5.
ADVANCE PARTIES 1 Officer per Company and 1 O.R. per Platoon, and 1 Officer and 4 O.R. from Bn.H.Q., will leave the Cave at 8.30am. and proceed to DAINVILLE to take over billets.

6.
REAR PARTY Companies will each detail a Rear Party of 1 Officer and 2 O.R per Platoon, and Bn.H.Q. 1 Officer and 8 O.R. who will be responsible for thoroughly cleaning Company areas. When the work is completed Rear Parties will report to the Battalion at Transport Lines.

7.
BAGGAGE Officers' Bed Rolls, Mess Boxes, Orderly Room supplies etc. will be piled in convenient dumps on the surface at 8.30am. - Transport will call for baggage and Company Kitchens by 8.45am.

8.
TRANSPORT Transport will proceed independently to new area on 19th September by road. Any route may be followed.

Dry Weather Tracks will be used providing weather conditions permit.

9.
MARCHING OUT STATE will be handed to the Battn. Orderly Room by 9.am.

ISSUED BY RUNNER AT _____

J. D. MACLEOD,

Captain/Adjutant

Copies to / 1 7th C.I.Bde.
2 C.O.
3 2 i/c
4 Adjutant
5, 6, 7 & 8 O.C. A.B.C.D Coys.
9 Sig. O.
10. Scout O.
11 Bombing O.
12 Quartermaster
13 Transport Officer
14 M.O.
15 R.S.M.
15, 16 17 War Diary
18 File

SECRET

ef Maps/
61 D 1/40,000
LENS 11 1/100,000

42ND CANADIAN BATTALION,
OPERATION ORDER NO. 213 COPY NO. 18
THURSDAY, SEPTEMBER 26TH, 1918.

INFORMATION The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade will move by train and route march from present area to concentration area North of QUEANT, on the 26th September, 1918.

INTENTION The 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. will move from billets in DAINVILLE to assembly area in U.24 d. and V.19. a & d., entraining at DAINVILLE at 8.15pm. 26th September, 1918, and detraining at CROISILLES

3. **PARADE** The Battalion will fall in, with head of column at road junction just West of the Orderly Room, ready to move off, at 7.45pm.
Intervals of 100 yards will be maintained between Companies on the march.

DRESS Battle Order with Greatcoats

5. **ADVANCE PARTY & GUIDES** As already detailed.

6. **LEWIS GUNS** and 24 discs per gun will be carried by the Crews.

BAGGAGE Officers' Bed Rolls, Trench Kits, Mess Supplies etc. for the line will be piled at Q.M. Stores by 1 pm.
All bagaged to be left in Store in DAINVILLE may be turned in any time up to 8 pm.

BILLETS Billets will be cleaned, ready for inspection, by 6 pm.

MARCHING OUT STATE will be handed in to Orderly Room by 3 pm.

J. D. MACLEOD,
Captain/Adjutant

ISSUED BY RUNNER AT_____

Copies to/
1 7th C.I.Bde
2 C.O.
3 2 i/c
4 Adjutant
5.6.7.8 O.Cs. A.B.C.D. Coys
9 Sig. O.
10. Scout O.
11 L.G. O
12 R.O.
13 Quartermaster
14 Transport O.
15 M.O.
16 R.S.M.
17. 18 19 War Diary
20 File

14

7th Canadian Infantry Brigade "Secret"
B. 1. Instructions No. 1. Copy No. 8.
25.9.18.

Ref. Map -
B. 1. SECRET No. 1.
1/36,000

INFORMATION.

1. (a) On a date to be notified later the Canadian Corps will attack with the object of forming a defensive flank to troops operating further South.

(b) The attack will be delivered by the 4th Canadian Division on the Right and the 1st Canadian Division on the Left.
The 3rd Canadian Division will be in support and the 2nd. Canadian Division will be in Reserve.

(c) The 4th Canadian Division and 1st Canadian Division will capture the BLUE LINE and exploit to the YELLOW LINE.

(d) When the BLUE LINE has been gained the 4th Canadian Division will narrow its frontage to the left to permit the 3rd Canadian Division to advance in line with it to the capture of the BROWN LINE and to the exploitation of the country beyond.

(e) The advance of the 57th Division on our Right from the BLUE LINE will be carried out by the 170th Brigade.

(f) The 12th Canadian Infantry Brigade are capturing the BLUE LINE in the 4th Canadian Division Area.

(g) The 3rd Canadian Division will be concentrated prior to "Z" day in the Area NORTH of QUEANT as ~~shown on map.~~

(h) Order of employment of Brigades of 3rd Canadian Division -

1. 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade
2. 9th Canadian Infantry Brigade
3. 8th Canadian Infantry Brigade.

2. **ACTION OF 7th CANADIAN INFANTRY BRIGADE.**

(a) **Prior to "Z" Day**

The Brigade will move from present area to the area just NORTH of QUEANT and areas are allotted as follows -

Brigade Headquarters - V.20.c.6.4.

The R.C.R.....V.25.d. and V.26.c. & d.
P.P.C.L.I.....V.26.a. & b. and V.20.c.
42nd Cdn. Bn.....U.24.d. and V.19.c. & d.
49th Cdn. Bn.....U.30.d. and V.25.a. & c.
7th T.M. Battery.....V.26.b.

(b) On "Z" Day.

(i) The Brigade will be prepared to move forward after Zero hour and take over frontage from the 4th Canadian Division as shown on map, and to attack from the BLUE LINE. Further instructions concerning the advance will be issued later.

(ii) Order of Employment of Battalions will be as follows -

The R.C.R.
P.P.C.L.I.
49th Cdn. Battalion.
42nd Cdn. Battalion.

The O/C 7th Cdn.T.M.Battery will be prepared to detail two guns each to each of the above Battalions.

(iii) The following probable situations with the consequent action of the 3rd Canadian Division, have been laid down by the 3rd Canadian Division.

(a) The enemy in full retreat and not holding the MARCOING LINE -
In this case the 3rd Canadian Division will continue to advance with the primary object of seizing a bridgehead in the N.E.corner of CAMBRAI.

(b) The enemy is holding the MARCOING LINE South of the CAMBRAI Road, but the 4th Canadian Division have succeeded in gaining a footing in RAILLENCOURT and SAILLY -
In this case the 3rd Canadian Division will work around through RAILLENCOURT and roll up the MARCOING LINE from the North, and then proceed as in (a) above.

(c) The enemy are holding the MARCOING LINE in strength, and 4th Canadian Division have been unable to gain a footing in RAILLENCOURT -
In this case the 3rd Canadian Division will not advance against the MARCOING LINE till the Artillery situation permits of the advance being carried out under a proper barrage.

(d) The enemy are counter-attacking the 4th Canadian Division on the BLUE LINE -
In this case an immediate counter offensive by the 3rd Canadian Division through the 4th. Canadian Division would probably lead to our occupation of the MARCOING LINE on the heels of the enemy.

(e) It must be remembered, however, that the Corps is responsible for protecting the left flank of the Third Army, and therefore the 3rd. Canadian Division must keep in close touch with 57th Division on its right, and conform to the latter's movements.

3. MACHINE GUNS

No.2 Company 3rd Battalion C.M.G.C. has been allotted to the Brigade for the operation

One Battery will be allotted to each Battalion, and Battery Commanders have been instructed to get in touch with the Battalion to which they are allotted.

In the preparation of Battalion schemes every advantage must be taken of the ability of Machine Guns to furnish direct covering fire.

Further instructions concerning Machine Guns will be issued later.

4. ARTILLERY

Instructions will be issued later.

5. TANKS

Instructions will be issued later.

6. ENGINEERS

Special parties are being detailed to assist Battalions in reconnaissance for land mines or other "booby" traps.

7. ROUTES

Instructions will be issued later covering the routes of advance from concentration area.

8. ACKNOWLEDGE.

Sgd. Major
7th Canadian Infantry Brigade.

Copies to -

1-4 O. A.D.C.D Cos.
5. C.O.
6. 2 i/c
7. Adjutant
8-10 War Diary
11 File.

SPECIAL ORDER OF THE DAY

BY

GENERAL SIR H. S. RAWLINSON, BART.,
G.C.V.O., K.C.B., K.C.M.G.,
COMMANDING FOURTH ARMY.

I have much pleasure in forwarding the following message received from the Field-Marshal Commander-in-Chief for communication to all ranks.

H Rawlinson Genl.

HEADQUARTERS, FOURTH ARMY,
23rd August, 1918.

Commanding Fourth Army.

GENERAL SIR H. S. RAWLINSON, BT., G.C.V.O., K.C.B., K.C.M.G.,
Commanding Fourth Army.

My warmest congratulations and thanks to yourself, your Staff, and all ranks under your command for the magnificent success recently gained by the Fourth Army. The brilliant manner in which the operation was prepared and successfully carried out, with comparatively small losses, by the III., Australian and Canadian Corps in conjunction with the Cavalry Corps, R.A.F. and Tank Corps, pays striking tribute to the skill of the leaders of all ranks and the bravery of the individual soldier, as well as to the high state of efficiency of the staffs and departmental services concerned. The gallant and skilful co-operation of the armoured cars and motor machine-gun batteries is worthy of the highest praise. Please convey to all ranks my appreciation and thanks.

D. HAIG, *Field-Marshal,*
Commander-in-Chief, British Armies in France.

17th August, 1918.

PRINTED IN FRANCE BY ARMY PRINTING AND STATIONERY SERVICES.

PRESS A—8/18

6

42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.
Narrative of Operations 25th -30th September 1918.

On the evening of the 25th September 1918 orders were received from Brigade that the Battalion would move from DAINVILLE by train and route march to Concentration Area North of QUEANT on the following day, entraining at DAINVILLE at 8.15 pm. At 4 pm. on the 26th. word was received that on account of a break down on the railway, train arrangements were cancelled and the Battalion would be moved to the Concentration Area by busses, and that busses would probably report by 5 o'clock. All arrangements for the move were immediately made but it was not until after 9 pm. when the first busses reported. The Battalion was then marched to DAINVILLE Station on the ARRAS-DOULENS Road, embussed about 10 pm. and left immediately afterwards, debussing at the Western edge of BULLECOURT about 2o'clock on the morning of the 26th. 27th

Guides which were sent forward with the Advance Party on the morning of the 25th. with instructions to meet the Battalion at QUEANT could not be advised in sufficient time of the change in arrangements and we consequently failed to meet them on arrival at BULLECOURT and were compelled to set out to find our Concentration Area without having made a reconnaissance. Two men of the 49th Canadian Battalion (E.R.) pointed out an overland route which was followed the night was very dark and wet and on account of the mud and hard travelling our Concentration Area in U.24.d. and V.19.c. and d. was not reached until 5 am.

At 5.20 on the morning of the 26th the attack commenced along the line of the CANAL DU NORD. The Canadian Corps attacking from just North of MOEUVRES to a point about fifteen hundred yards South of the ARRAS CAMBRAI Road. The first attack was launched by the 2nd. Canadian and 4th Canadian Divisions, the 1st. Division on the right and the 4th Division on the left, with the 3rd Canadian Division in Support.

The 4th Canadian Division had for its objectives the MARCOING LINE - BOURLON VILLAGE and BOURLON WOOD. and was to narrow its frontage to the left to permit the 3rd Canadian Division to advance in line with it to the capture of the MARCOING LINE, the villages of ST OLLE - NEUVILLE ST REMY and TILLOY together with the bridge heads along the ST QUENTIN CANAL in A.4.s.29 and s.30 and the exploitation of the country beyond.

The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade was the first Brigade of the 3rd Canadian Division to be employed, and the attack was to be made with the R.C.R. on the right, the P.P.C.L.I. on the left, the 49th Canadian Battalion (E.R.) in support, and the 42nd Canadian Battalion R.H.C. in reserve.

If the 2st and 4th Canadian Divisions captured their objectives in schedule time the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade was to move forward from its Concentration Area according to time table but no moves were to be made without first receiving orders from Brigade Headquarters.

Sheet No.2.

On the morning of the 28th all arrangements were made to go forward. Details, Specialists, and officers exempted were left at the Concentration Area and a Details Camp established there.

At 9.50 am. on the 26th the Battalion left the Concentration Area with 22 officers and 619 O.R. and proceeded along the Northern edge of the HINDENBURG SUPPORT LINE to the first Assembly Position at D.5.c. At 11 am. we received orders to advance to the second Assembly position in E.9.c. The route followed was along the Northern side of the Hindenburg Support Line to the South of INCHY-EN-ARTOIS, and by overland route through E.7.d. and E.8.a. to the CANAL DU NORD at approximately E.8.b.2.6. The Canal was crossed on an Infantry Bridge which had just been constructed by the Engineers, and the Battalion arrived in the Second Assembly Area at 1.30 pm. Companies were distributed in the trenches in E.9.a. and c. where they remained for the afternoon. At 7 o'clock we received orders to move at once to the SUNKEN ROAD in E.6.a. Advance Parties of 1 officer and 4 O.R. per Company went forward to get the allotment of the Area, and Companies prepared to move. The Battalion set out immediately and arrived in the new position in the SUNKEN ROAD at 10.10 pm. The night was very cold There was no cover and the men had to lie in the open The area was also heavily shelled with gas and the men were compelled to sleep with their Box Respirators adjusted.

At 7 am on the morning of the 28th. the Battalion moved from the area in E.6.a. and took up a position in rear of the railway embankment East of BOURLON WOOD in E.8.b. There was considerable shelling of the area but on account of the good cover behind the embankment we suffered only a few casualties There was no cover from the rain, however, and everybody got thoroughly wet.

Our orders were to follow the attacking battalions in close reserve and to be prepared to move in and occupy the MARCOING LINE, but owing to heavy opposition the R.C.R. and P.P.C.L.I. were not able to get forward and we consequently remained behind the railway embankment during the day.

At 6 pm. orders were received to move forward into closer support and at 7 pm. the Battalion moved, Companies occupying the following areas .-

A Company - Sunken Road in E.10.b.
B " Sunken Road in F.2.b.
C " Sunken Road in F.3.d.
D Company was left in reserve in rear of the railway embankment in F.8.b.

At 9.30 pm The Commanding Officer received orders to report to Brigade - Company Commanders were sent for and reported to Battalion Headquarters to wait for his return. The Commanding Officer reported back at 2 o'clock on the morning of the 29th. with instructions that the Battalion was to attack at 6 am. Zero was later changed to 8 am. Verbal information and instructions were given to Company Commanders. The attack was to take place along the whole Canadian Corps front

and the tasks given to the 42nd Canadian Battalion R.H.C. were to capture the railway embankment in S.20.b. and d. Northwest of TILLOY, then to advance and capture the high ground in S.18 and S.16 then to swing South east and seize the bridge heads on the St QUENTIN CANAL in the neighbourhood of RAMILLES and PONT d'AVRE The 49th Canadian Battalion (E.R.) were attacking on our immediate right and the 4th Division on our left.

At 3 am. The Battalion commenced to move, going via 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade Report Centre at F.4.d.3.3 where guides from the P.P.C.L.I. were picked up Companies had all passed the Report Centre by 4 am. and Battalion Headquarters moved to the MARCOING LINE at approximately F.5.c.7.4. Shelling in the vicinity of RAILLENCOURT was heavy but we fortunately sustained only a few casualties. The Battalion assembled for the attack in the low ground in rear of the HAYNECOURT-CAMBRAI Road in X.30.c. and were reported all in position at 7 am. The morning was fine with a heavy ground mist which prevented any visibility but as the ground had never been previously reconnoitered it was feared that direction might be difficult to maintain.

At 8 o'clock on the morning of September 29th, the Battalion jumped off from the light railway in X.30.a. and S.25.c. The attack was made on a two company front, A Company under Capt. H.B.Trout on the right and C Company under Capt. C.S.Martin, M.C. on the left, B Company under Major Pease, D.S.O. was in right support and D Company under Lieut. M.K.Craig in left support. Good progress was made until the Battalion reached the wire running in front of the dump in S.20.a. and S.26.a. This consisted of a broad low belt. It was not cut and the men were compelled to work their way through it which seriously delayed the advance. Some casualties from Machine Gun fire were suffered while going through.

When we had advanced about half way between the wire and the DOUAI-CAMBRAI Road a withering fire from Machine Guns at point blank range opened up from the road in front and from the right flank and caused very severe casualties.

In spite of this four parties succeeded in crossing the DOUAI-CAMBRAI Road and established posts in the dump in S.20.c and S.20.b. Capt. H.B. Trout with a party of ten men established a post at approximately S.20.b.60.80. Although severely wounded he held on through the day and broughtin the remnants of his party at dusk. Six of his men were wounded by Machine Guns and snipers during the day. Another small party under Lieut. B.C.Hutchison also established a post south of this and held it until dusk. On the following day the bodies of an officer and several O.R. were found well across the road near the railway embankment. It was evident that he had a very strong outpost line along the road in front of the railway.

Enemy machine gun fire was intense from the railway embankment in front and from both flanks. All Company Commanders, and all officers acting Second-in-Command of Companies, were casualties, and it was impossible to make any further advance. The slightest movement drew fire from all sides.

At 11 am. the enemy placed a heavy barrage along

the line of the CAMBRAI DOUAI Road in S.20 and 26 and parties of Germans were seen coming over the high ground in S.15 towards the railroad. These were engaged by our Machine guns and by the artillery and they were forced to withdraw.

As it was impossible to capture the railway embankment without further artillery on account of the machine gun fire, it was arranged that half an hour bombardment with 4.5 Hows. be placed on the embankment, that patrols be sent out to investigate, and if successful in reaching the embankment that the Companies would advance and capture it. It was suggested that on account of it being almost impossible to attack the embankment frontally that Companies should work round to the Northern flank and go down the track. The bombardment commenced at 12.30 pm. Patrols attempted to move forward but machine guns engaged them from both flanks and they were unable to make any headway.

As it was seen that further advance was impossible arrangements were made to distribute the Battalion in depth. A very slight rearrangement could be made on account of the movement but advantage was taken of a certain amount of cover behind the various dumps in S.20.c. The Battalion was gradually reorganised into six platoons, Nos. 1 and 2 holding the front line from S.20.c.70.70 to road at S.20.c.10.90, Nos. 3 and 4 Platoons from S.20.c.70.40 to road at S.19.c.10.90, and Nos.5 and 6 Platoons from S.20.c. 50.10 to road at S.19.c.10.90. Owing to casualties the attached machine gun section could only man six guns and they were placed with our reserve platoons. A disposition in greater depth was attempted but machine gun fire made it impossible. By 4.30 pm. we managed to get in touch with the 2nd. C.M.R. on the right but could not locate the 4th Canadian Division on the left.

Just at dusk three prisoners, apparently deserters came into our lines. They reported that the enemy were putting out strong battle patrols at night along the western edge of the railway in S.20, but that no counter attack was imminent.

It was requested that the artillery intermittently shell the embankment in S.20.b. and S.20.d. to prevent any assembly of troops in thatarea.

Aboyt 7.30 pm. we got in touch with the 38th. Battalion on the left. A patrol was sent out and located them at approximately S.19.b.20.55.

A further readjustment of platoons was made so as to organise the Battalions in greater depth.

On the morning of the 30th. the advance was continued The P.P. C.L.I. attacked and moppedup the railway embankment in S.20.d. After the embankment was cleared up the R.C.R. were to advance over the railway and capture the high ground beyond. In accordance with orders at Zero plus 20 minutes a composite company under Captain E.B.Finley.-M.C. moved forward to occupy the Sunken Road in S.15.b. and d. and the other company under Lieut G.S.Ryder, moved to the railway embankment. On reaching the embankment it was found that elements of the R.C.R P.P.C.L.I., 2nd C.M.R. and 4th Division were occupying it. These units hadmade an attempt to push forward but owing to heavy casualties had to withdraw to the railway.

Sh et No.5.

Between 12 noon and 1 pm. a considerable amount of enemy movement was seen in the neighbourhood of the Mill and Farm in S.15 central. This was reported to Brigade with the request that this area be shot up. About 1.10 pm. the enemy attempted another counter attack on our positions on the railway embankment. As we were well established at that time and had a number of German machine guns in action the enemy were caught by our machine gun and artillery fire when coming over the crest of the hill and were forced to retire.

As soon as the enemy were seen retiring our men immediately pushed out and occupied the SUNKEN ROAD in S. 20.b. and S.21.c. A Platoon of the R.C.R. under Lieut. Dion succeeded in establishing a position on the high ground in S.21.a. The 4th Division did not conform. Owing to intense Machine gun fire no further progress was made and at dusk the R.C.R. forward platoon returned to the sunken road.

No further change was made in the distribution of the Battalion that night, one company remaining in the Sunken Road in S.15.b. and d. and the other Company in the railway embankment.

On the morning of the 1st October the advance of the Division was continued by the 9th Canadian Infantry Brigade with the 4th Division on the left. The attack appeared to go well and about half an hour after zero troops were seen going over the crest of the high ground in front.

About noon detachments from the 13th, 14th, and 16th Battalions were seen retiring to the railway embankment across our front on the left flank. Lieut.Col.Ewing D.S.O., M.C. who was in the forward area at the time immediately took the matter in hand, turned them about and supplying them with officers from the 42nd Battalion sent them forward with orders to advance and to dig in if stopped. At the same time one platoon of the 42nd Bn and one platoon of the R.C.R. were sent forward to the high ground in the neighbourhood of the mill in S.15 central.

A Battery of the 2nd Divisional Machine gun Bn. was moved into position in rear. At 3.25 pm. Lieut.Col. Ewing reported that he had established a line from S.S. d.90.20 to S.15.d.20.75 thence along the crest of the hill in S.15.c. and d. and S.21.a. and S.21.b. The garrison was made up of elements of the 3rd and 11th. Brigade, one platoon of the R.C.R. and one platoon of the 42nd. The remainder of the 42nd were disposed in the SUNKEN ROAD in S.14.c. and S.20.b.between the SUNKEN ROAD and railway embankment and in the embankment. The front was well covered with machine guns. A battery of the 2nd Div. machine gun Bn. was placed in position well forward of the railway embankment and batteries of the 3rd Divisional Machine Gun Coy. on the left flank in S.21.a. and S.15.c. The men dug in in a commanding position and the situation on the left was restored.

At 6 pm. we received verbal instructions that the Brigade would be withdrawn the same night and about 8.30 pm. on orders from Brigade to withdraw the Battalion moved out and marched back to the area north of the QUARRY WOOD

C A S U A L T I E S

		Killed	Wounded	
Officers	.....	6	11	
Other ranks	.....	55	221	
		61	232	
	Totals		61	293

NOTE: Officer casualties include Lieut. W.G. Murray attached 7th T.M. Battery, wounded.

C A P T U R E S

Our captures included two large dumps (one engineer material and one ammunition) located in squares S.19.d. and S.20.a. and d.
The engineer dump contained enormous supplies of -

Lumber
Cement
Engineers tools and material
Wire and stakes
One saw mill (complete)

The ammunition dump contained -

Trench Mortars
Ammunition of all calibres
Bombs
Grenades
Signal Lights, etc.

A number of machine guns were captured in the dump and along the railway embankment. Owing to prevailing conditions numbers could not be checked. In one portion of the railway embankment alone from S.20.b.2.4. to S.20.d.7.4. which was garrisoned by our No.1 Composite Company after the attack of the P.P.C.L.I. on the morning of the 30th. 36 machine guns were picked up. In all probability a number of these were captured by the P.P.C.L.I.

LESSONS LEARNT FROM RECENT OPERATIONS

1. The desirability of getting troops to the Concentration Area with as little fatigue as possible. Owing to the unfortunate breakdown of the railway and ~~arrangements~~ changed arrangements, the men were "standing to" from 4.30 pm. on the afternoon of September 28th, and did not reach the Concentration Area until nearly 5 o'clock the following morning, and in a very tired condition being loaded down with their battle equipment, extra rations etc.

2. The necessity of more time being given Battalion Commanders prior to an intended attack to go into the matter thoroughly with their Company Commanders, and the latter in turn with their Companies, and that ample time be given for the latter to get into position.

3. The desirability of an opportunity to make a reconnaissance before an attack if at all possible.

4. The necessity for more accurate information as to the existing line, and as to position from which the jump off is to be made, before attempting an attack, and the consequent impossibility of laying down a proper line for the artillery.

5. Faulty information, as in the attack of the 29th Septemberwhen a belt of wire was run into which was not known to exist.

6. Had it been possible to delay the attack on the morning of the 29th in order to get full information as to conditions, I am of the opinion that with a bombardment by the heavies on the dumps and railway line, followed by a barrage, it would have been possible to have got forward without anything like as heavy casualties.

7. That for the best results the troops are being used too continuously without an opportunity to properly reorganize, which is particularly a necessity with regard to N.C.Os. amongst whom the casualties have been heavy.

M A P S

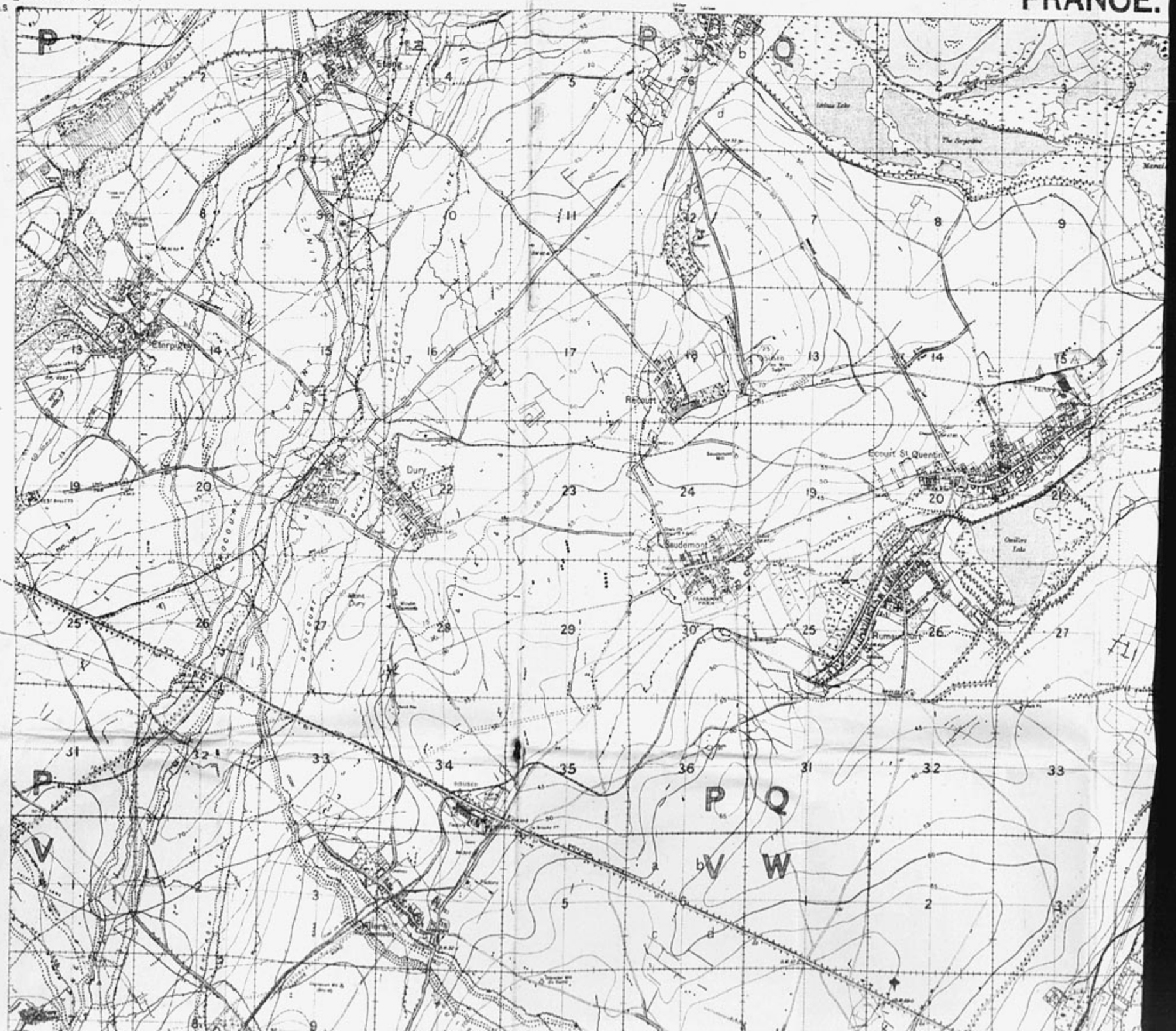
WAR DIARY

42ND CDN.INF.BATTALION

SEPTEMBER,1918

1: 20.000.

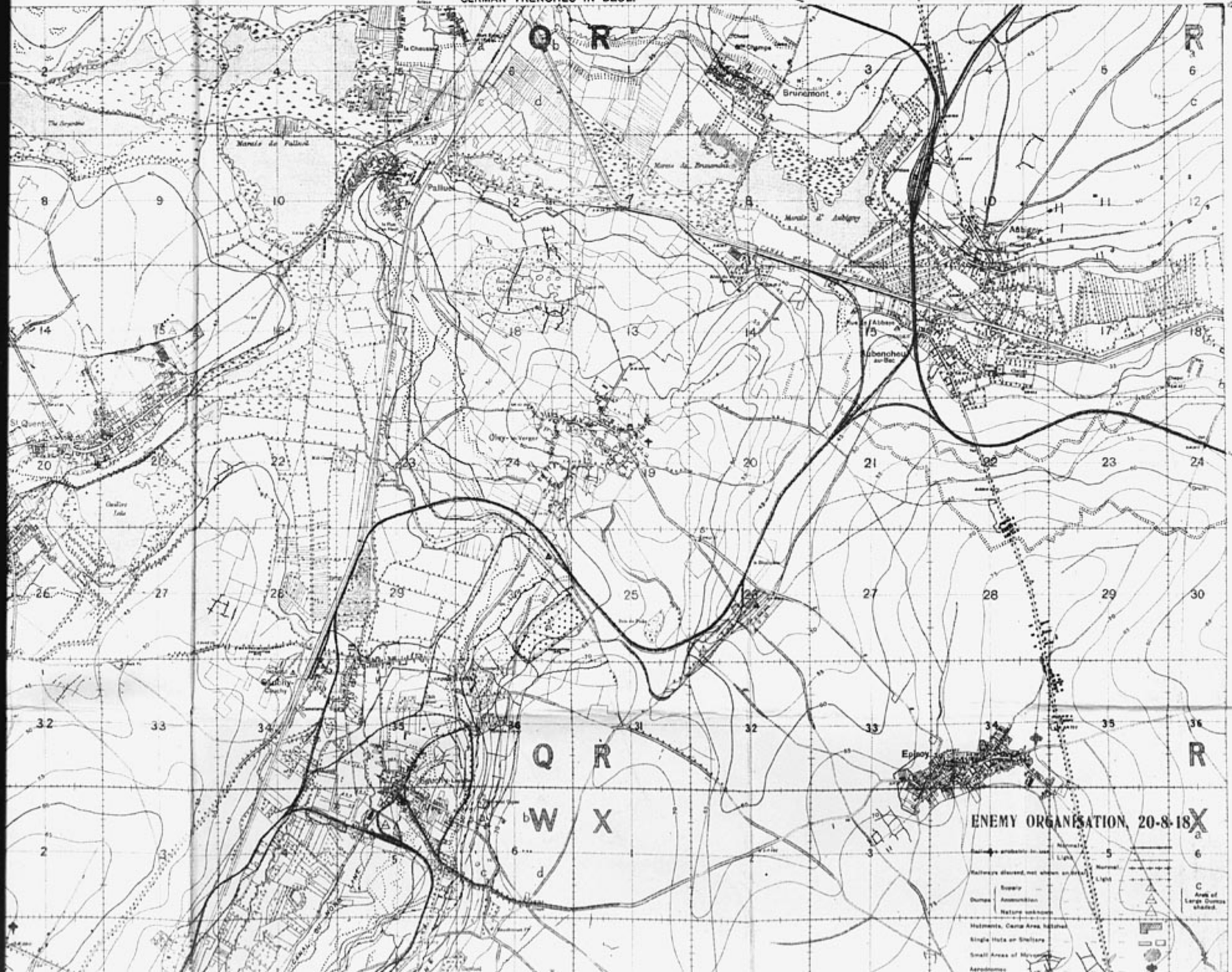
FRANCE.

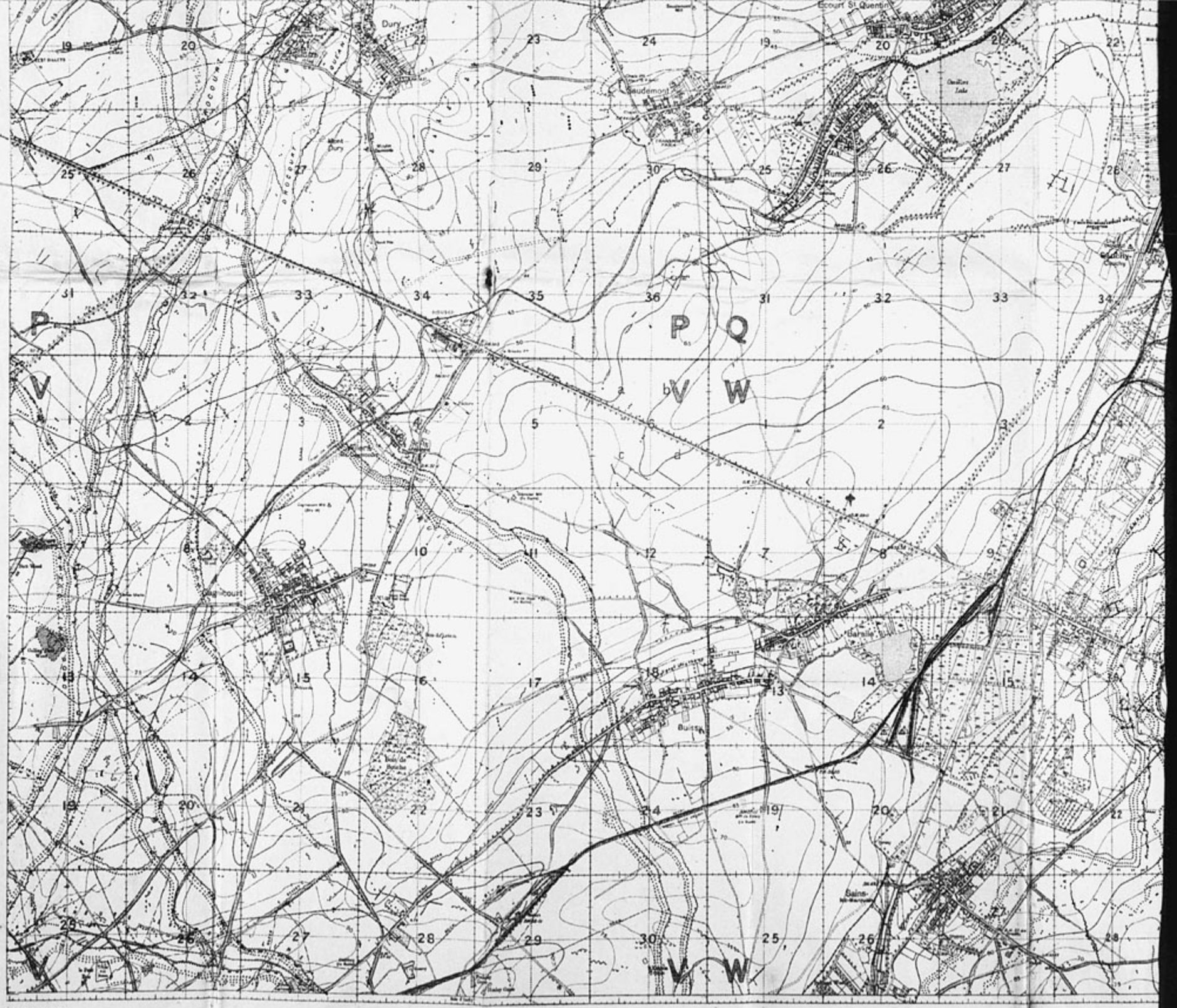


FRANCE.

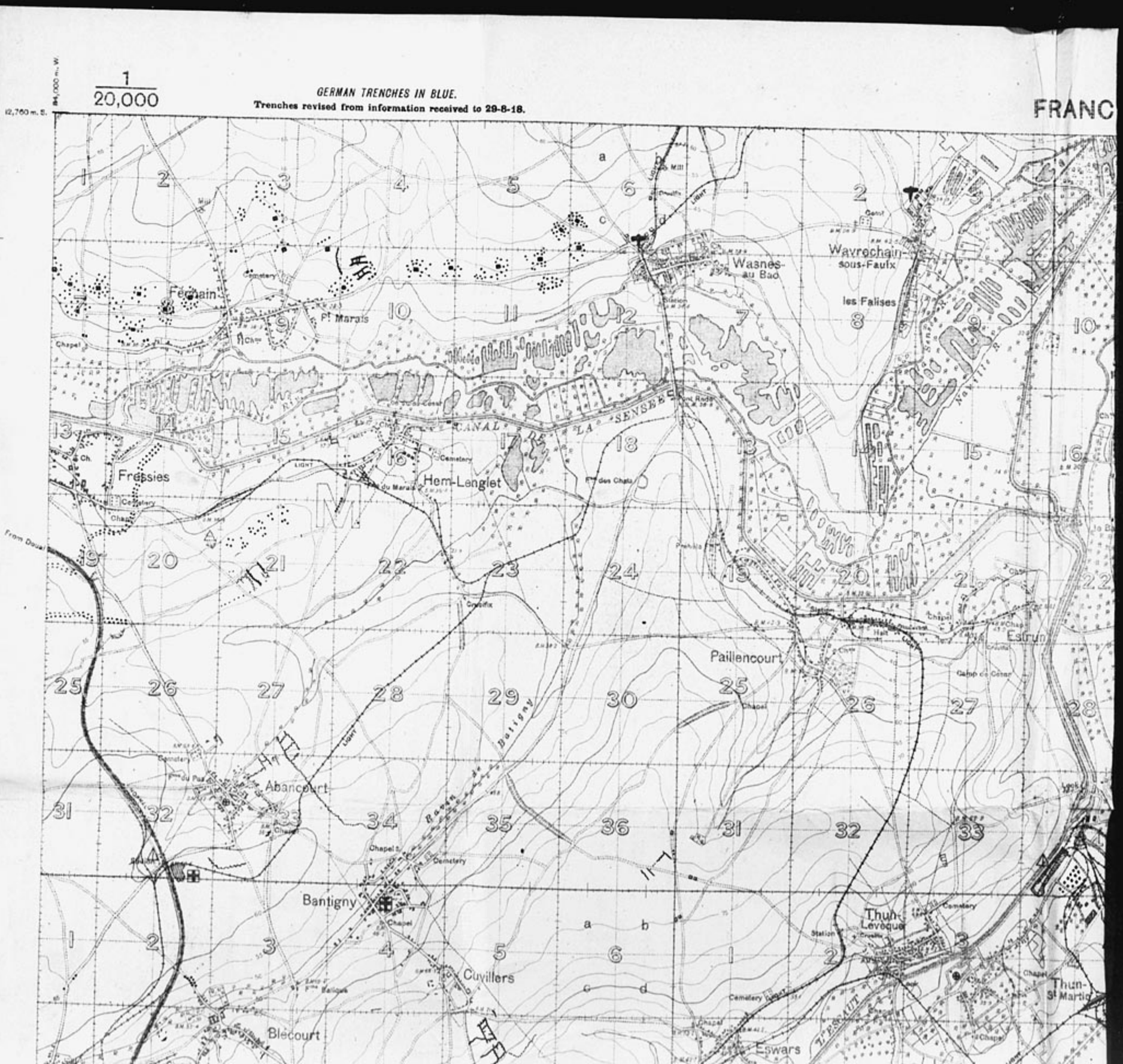
NOTE CHANGE OF COLOUR:-
GERMAN TRENCHES IN BLUE.

EDITION 5.A TRENCHES CORRECTED TO 20-8-18. SHEET 51B S.E.




Ecourt St Quentin
Dury
Saudemont
Rumaucourt
Cagnicourt
Baralle
Buissy
Sains-lès-Marquion
P
Q
V
W
a
b
c
d
22.760 m.S.
100.000 m.W.
G.S.G.S. 2742
Yards 1000
500
0
1000
2000
3000
4000
Scale 1:20,000
Metres 1000
500
0
1000
2000
3000
4000

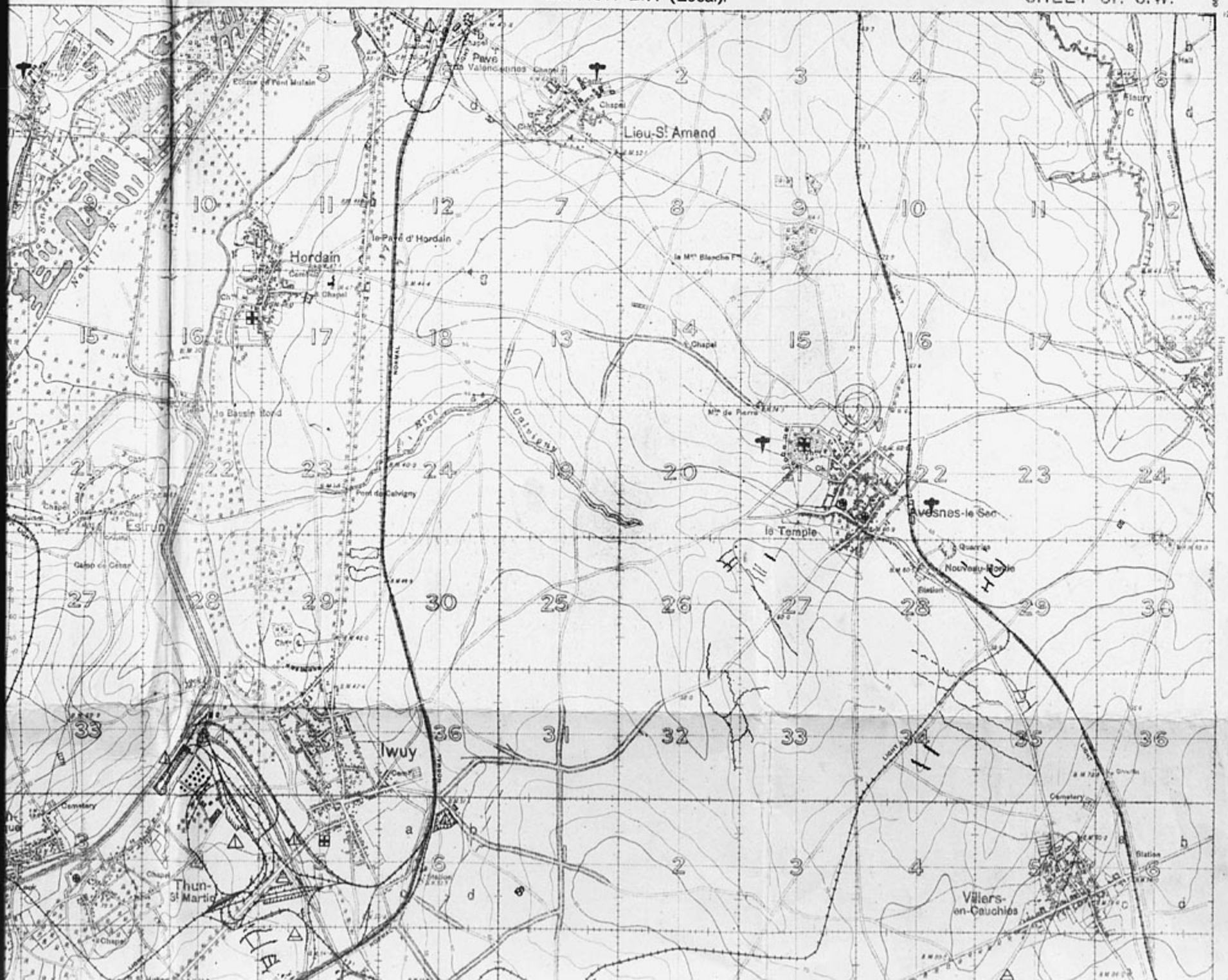

ENEMY ORGANISATION, 20-8-18
Epehy
Haynecourt
Bailleulcourt
Bailleul
Q
R
W
X
Railways disused, not shown on map
Dumps
Supply
Ammunition
Nature unknown
Huts, Camp Area hatched
Single Huts or Shelters
Small Areas of Huts
Aerodromes
Red Cross sign
Light
Normal
Area of Large Dumps shelled
9000 Yards
8000 Metres
Ordnance Survey, (O.B.) August, 1918.


1
20,000
GERMAN TRENCHES IN BLUE.
Trenches revised from information received to 29-8-18.
FRANC
Wasnes-au Bac
Wavrechain-sous-Faulx
les Falises
Fenain
Pt Marais
CANAL DE LA SENSEE
Fresnes
Hem-Lenglet
Paillencourt
Estrun
Abancourt
Bantigny
Cuvillers
Thun-Levêque
Thun-St Martin
Blécourt
Eswars
From Douai

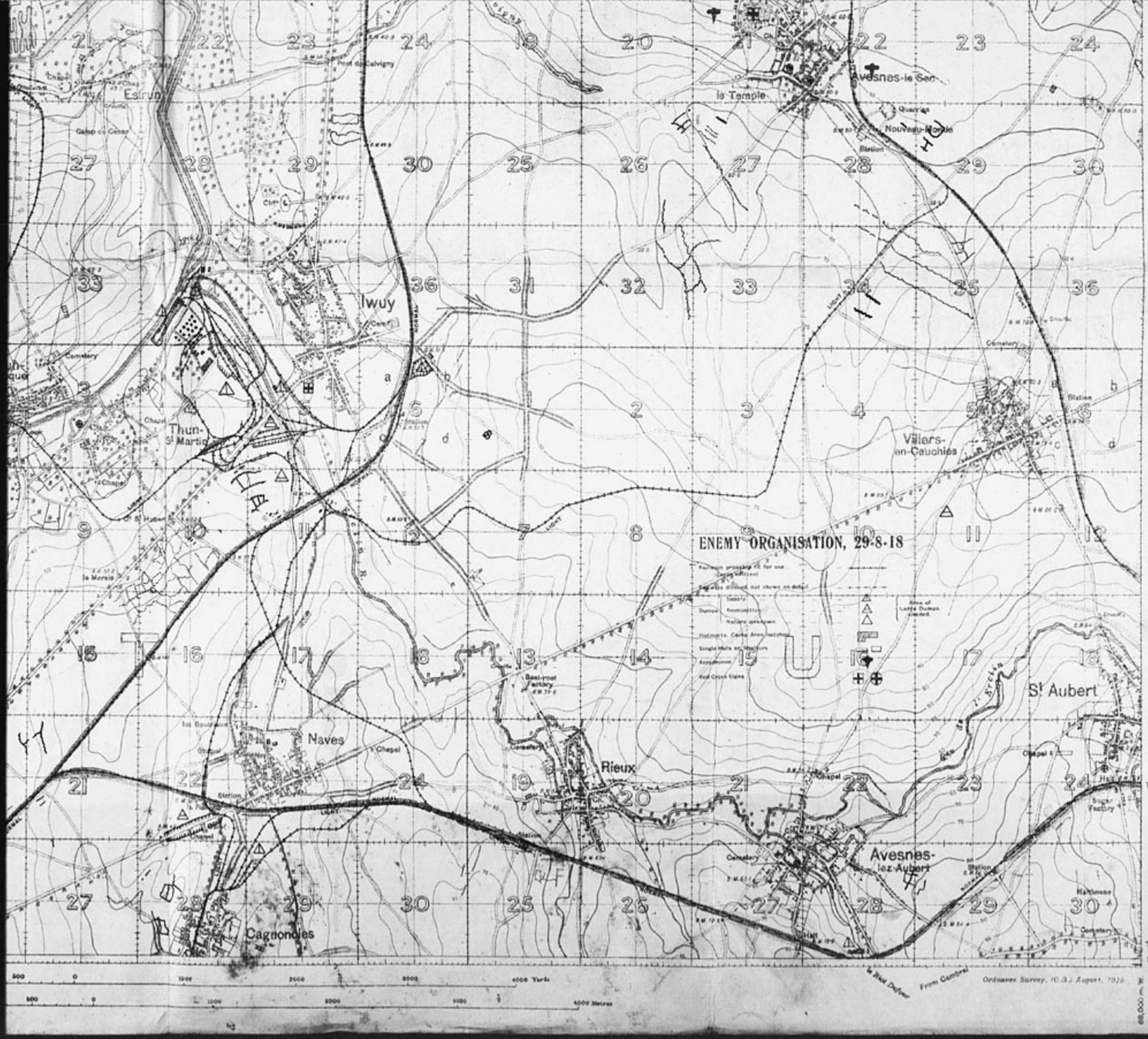
FRANCE

EDITION 2.A (Local).

SHEET 51A S.W.




Paillencourt
Estrun
Abancourt
Bantigny
Cuvillers
Thun-Levêque
Thun-St Martin
Blécourt
Eswars
Sancourt
Ramillies
Tilloy
Morenchies
Escaudœuvres
Cagn
Scale 1:20,000
G.S.G.S. 2742.


ENEMY ORGANISATION, 29-8-18
Avesnes-le Sec
le Temple
Nouvelle-Monde
Estrun
Iwuy
Thun-St Martin
Villers-en-Cauchies
Naves
Rieux
St Aubert
Avesnes-lez-Aubert
Cagnoncles
Beet-root Factory
Sugar Factory
Cemetery
Chapel
Station
Quarry
Windmill
Farmhouse
Hall
Light
Area of Large Dumps needed
Railways providing rolling stock for use during withdrawal
Railways dismantled not shown on detail
Dumps
Supply
Ammunition
Railway dismantled
Halt points, Cable Area switches
Single Mats on Stations
Accommodation
Red Cross Signs
To Solesmes
From Cambrai
Ordnance Survey, (C.B.) August, 1916
Yards
Metres

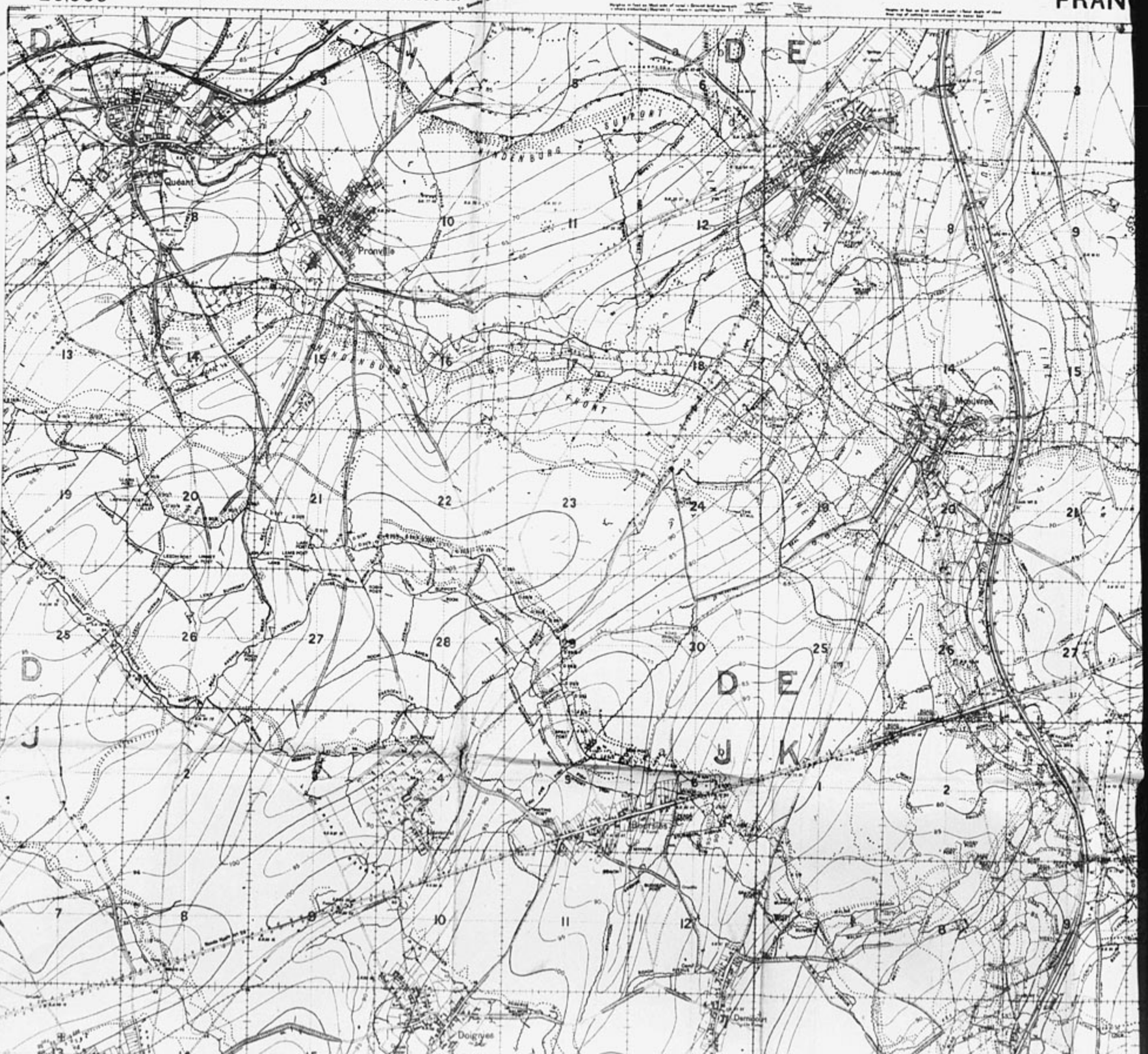
-51 A S.W-

1
20,000

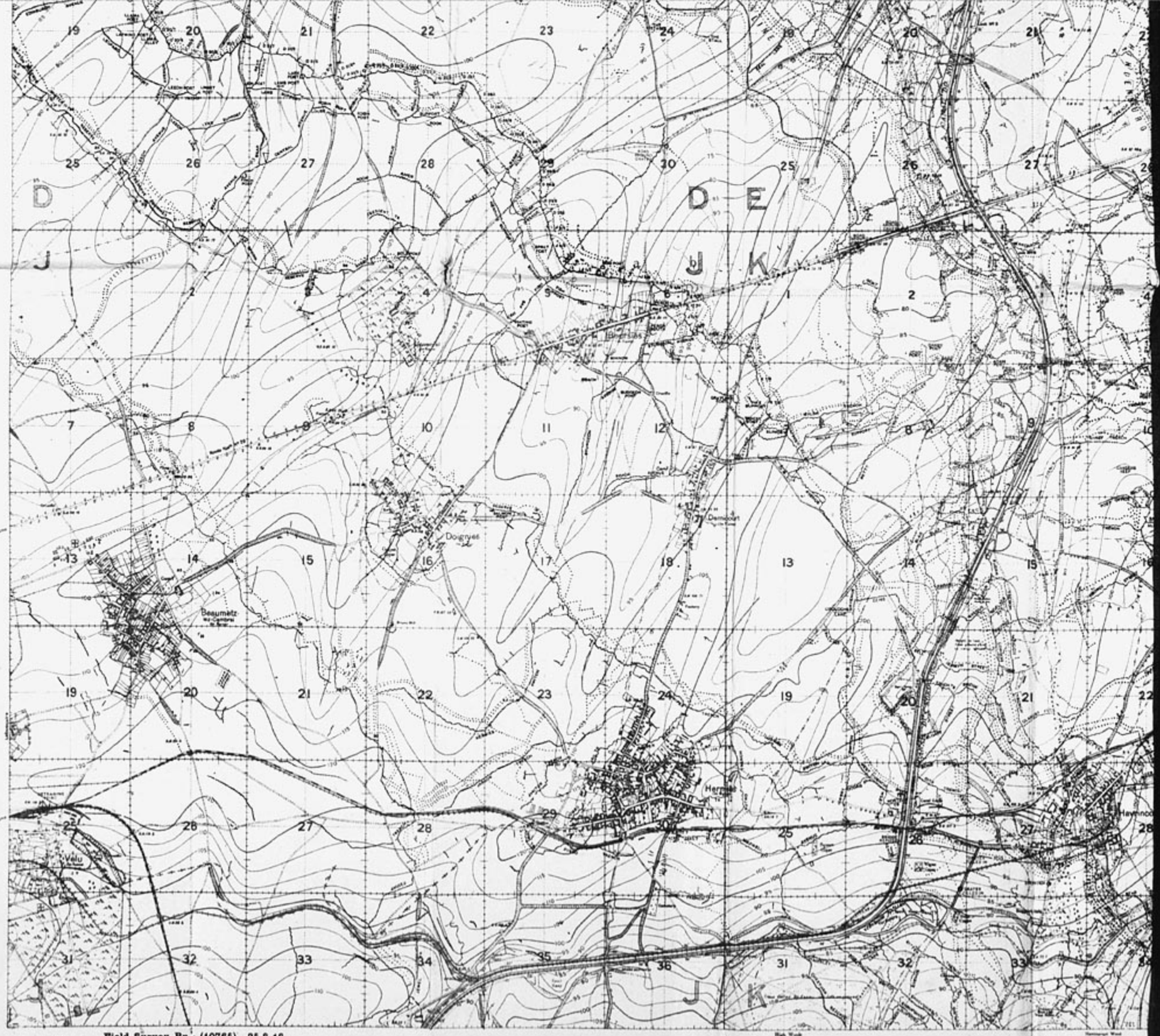
GERMAN TRENCHES IN BLUE.

Trenches revised from information received to 20-8-18.

FRAN



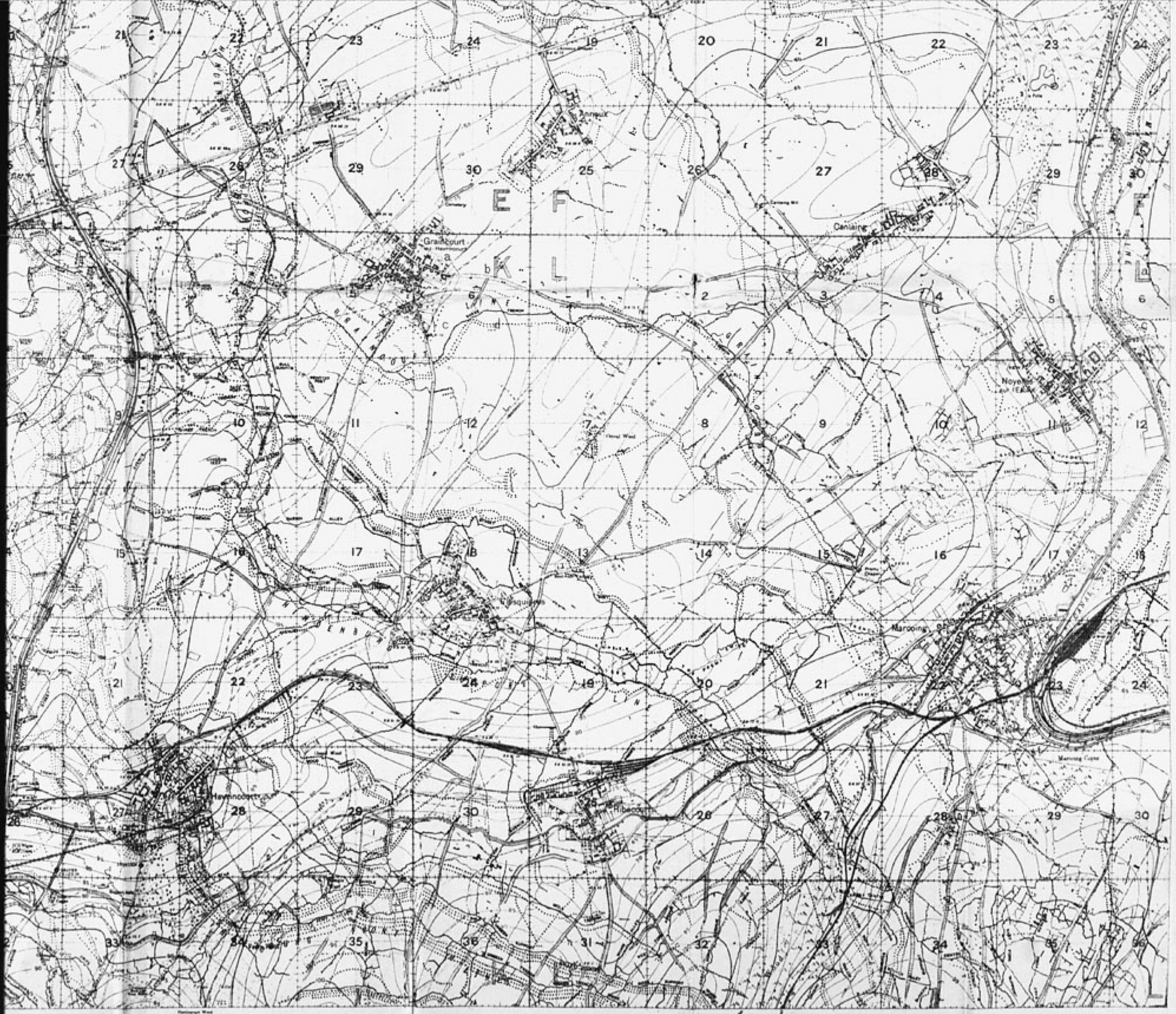
FRANCE. EDITION 7b. (Local) (With minor detail corrections). SHEET 57c N.E.



G.S.G.S. 3743. Field Survey Bn. (10765). 25-8-18.

(10765) 25-8-18.

Scale 1 : 20,000

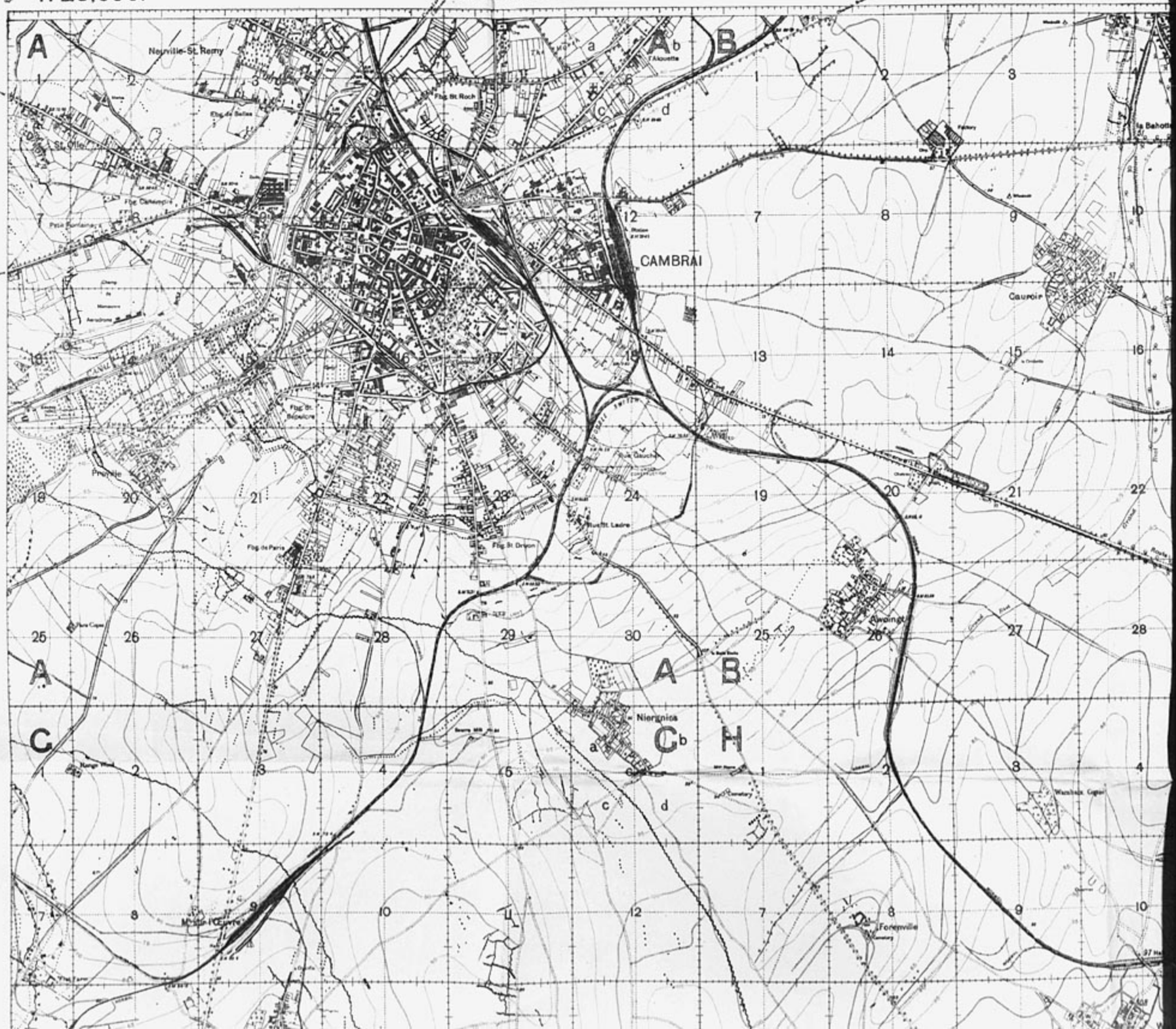

E F
K L
Grainscourt
Caniaire
Marcoing
Havrincourt
Ribecourt
Scale 1 : 20,000

57 c NE

1: 20,000.

GERMAN TRENCHES IN BLUE.
Trenches revised from information received to 29-8-18.

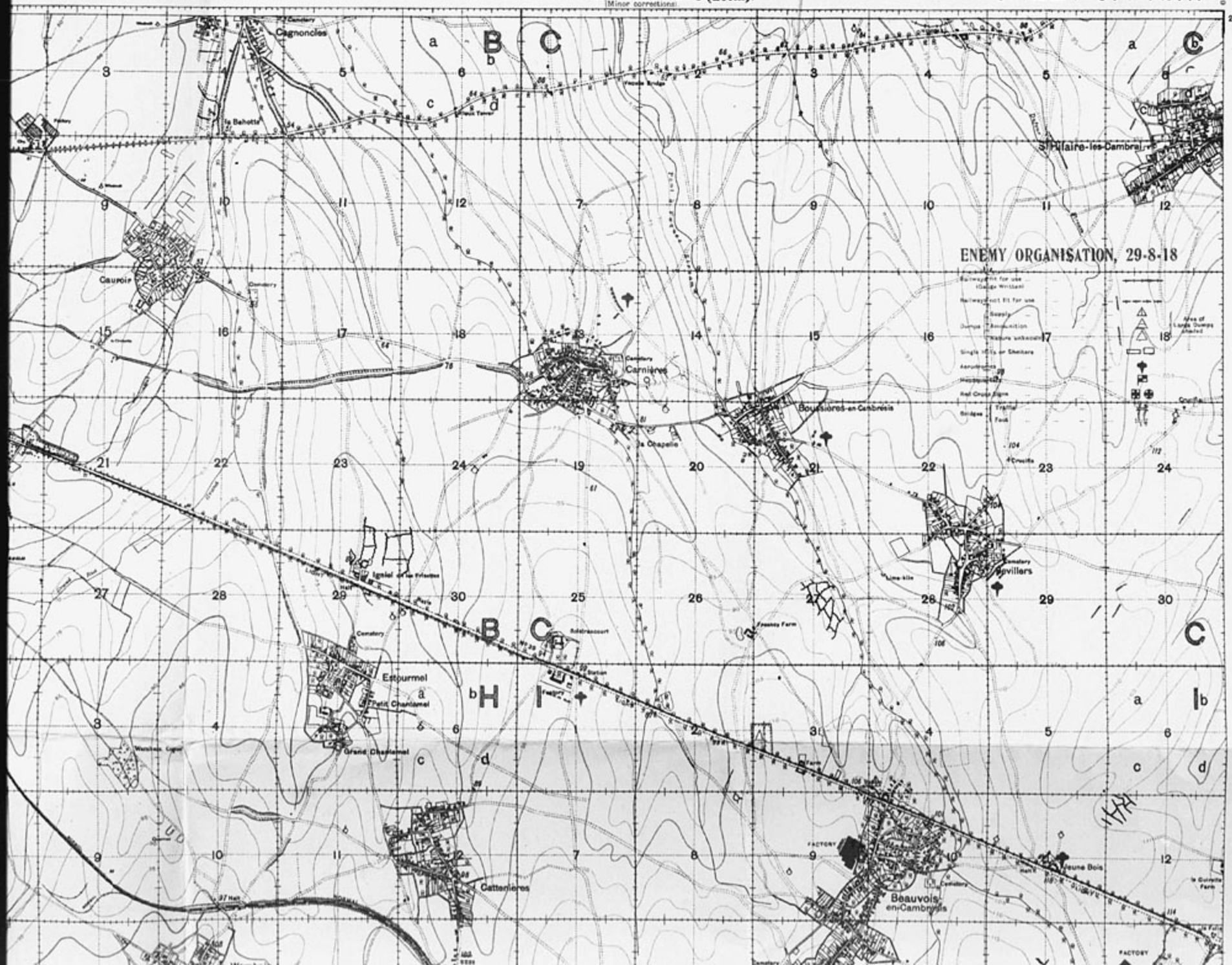
FRANCE

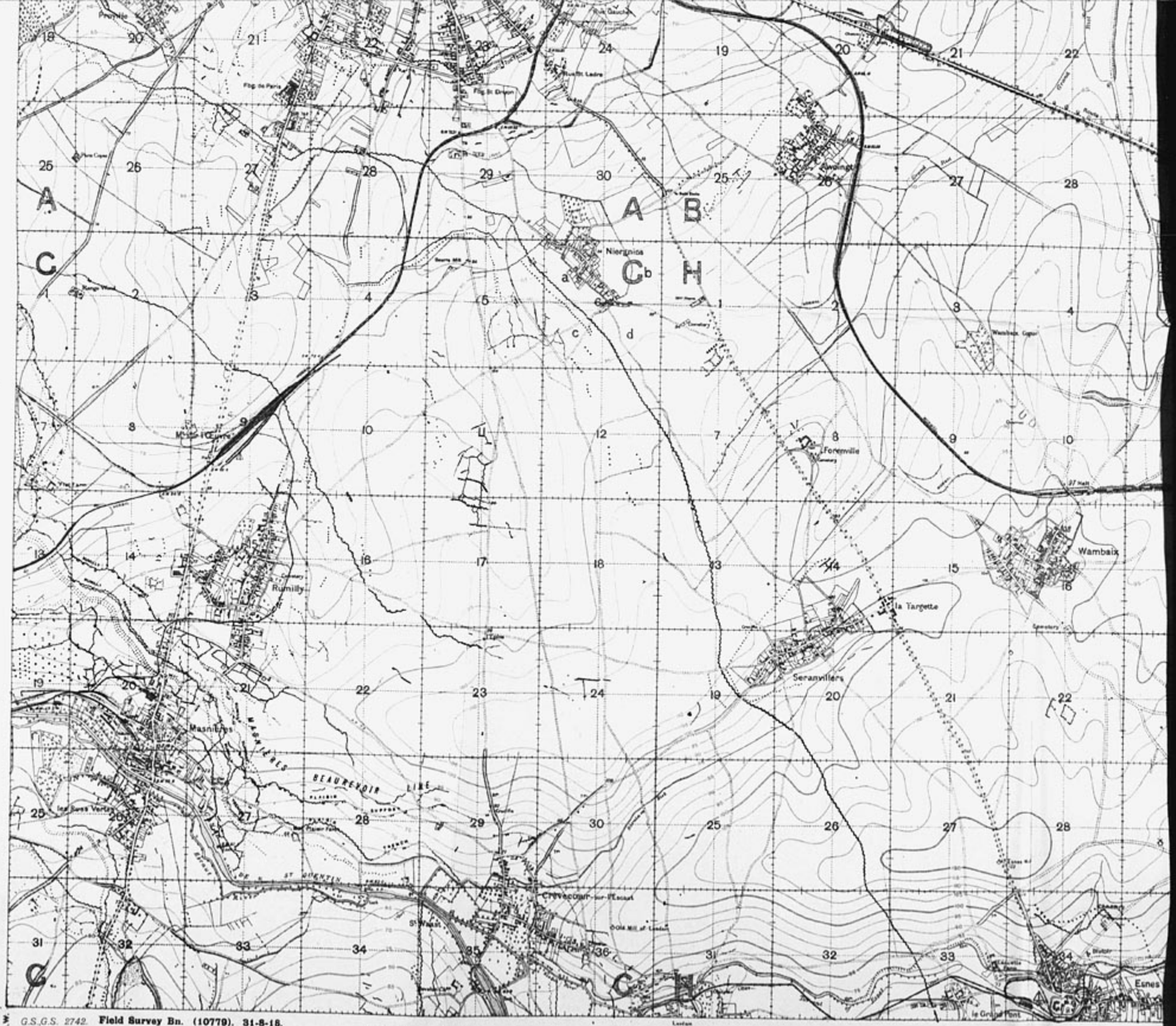


FRANCE

EDITION 3. **b (Local).**
(Minor corrections)

SHEET 57B. N.W.





32.760 m.S.

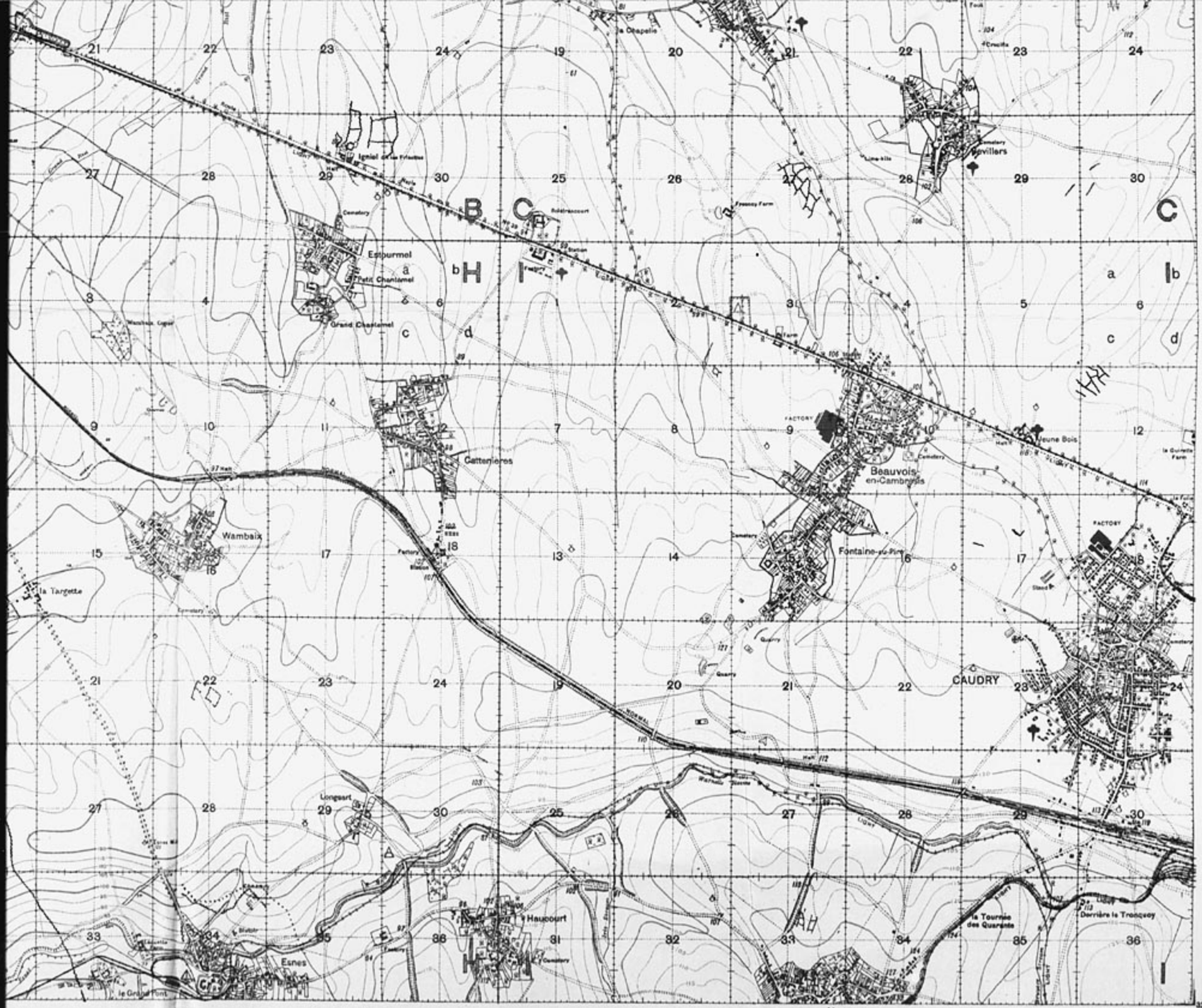
84.000 m.W.

G.S.G.S. 2742. **Field Survey Bn. (10779). 31-8-18.**

Scale 1:20,000

Yards 1000 500 0 1000 2000 3000 4000 5000

Metres 1000 500 0 1000 2000 3000 4000


Le Drapelle
Ignial
Neuvillers
Estourmel
Petit Chaulamel
Grand Chaulamel
Cattenieres
Wambaix
la Targette
Beauvois
en-Cambrésis
Jeune Bois
Fontaine-au-Pire
CAUDRY
Longsart
Hauboourt
Esnes
le Grand Pont
la Tournée des Quarante
Derrière le Tronqueoy
Ligny
en-Cambrésis
32,760 m.S.
68 000 m.W.
Ordnance Survey, (O.B.) August, 1916.

57 B NW

10

CONFIDENTIAL

WAR DIARY

-----oooOooo-----

-:- OF -:-

42nd CAN CANADIAN BATTALION - 3rd CANADIAN DIVISION

FROM 1st Oct TO 30th Oct 1918

-----oooOooo-----

VOLUME 37

With appendices 1-6

WAR DIARY

42nd Canadian Bn. 3rd Canadian Division,

from 1st to 30th October, 1918.

Volume 37.

Diary Text	5 Pages.
Appendix I.	42nd Bn. O.O. 214 dated the 20th October, Instructions for move of 42nd Battalion to billets in AUDERCHICOURT on the 20th October.
" 2	O.O. 215 dated the 21st October, Instructions for march of 42nd Battalion to billets in CATAINE on October 21st.
" 3	O.O. 216 dated the 22nd October, Instructions reference advance on October 22nd.
" 4	O.O. 217 dated the 27th October, Instructions for relief of 42nd Bn. by 2nd C.M.R. on night 27th and 28th October.
" 5	O.O. 218 dated the 30th October , re distribution of 7th C.I.B. on the 30th October.
" 6	42nd Bn. Narrative of Operations from October 20th to the 26th.

1-6

37

ORIGINAL

CONFIDENTIAL

WAR DIARY

OCTOBER 1918.

42nd CANADIAN BATTALION

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY
or
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.

Army Form C. 2118.

(*Erase heading not required.*)

Place 1918	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
OCTOBER	1st.		The Operations for the day are covered in the Narrative attached to the Diary for the month of September.	
			At 6 pm. we received verbal instructions that the Brigade would withdraw that night and at 8.30 pm., on orders from Brigade, the Battalion moved out and marched back to the area North of QUARRY WOOD, where it remained until the 10th October. The area contained little or no accommodation and much time was spent by the men in digging in and making themselves comfortable with the use of bivvies.	
			At midnight on the night of the 30th Sept./1st. Oct. the Continental system of time was brought into use throughout the British Army.	
			Lieut. E. G. Shepherd was killed in action by shell fire early in the day.	
	2nd.		Lieut. B. C. Salter, who had been slightly wounded in the attack of September 29th, rejoined the Battalion.	
	4th.		A draft of 63 reinforcements was received by the Battalion.	
			Lieuts. M. McLaren and A. Knox reported and were taken on the strength of the Battalion.	
			On this date the funeral of the following officers who had been killed in action took place:-	
			Captain C. S. Martin, M.C. — Lieut. R. D. P. Hawkes, Lieut. D. B. Gilmour, — " J. R. Hubbard, " T. West, — " E. G. Shepherd,	
			They were buried in the Military Cemetery just East of the Canal in front of INCHY-EN-ARTOIS.- Sheet 51.C. E.3.a.20.60.	
	5th		The Appointments and Commissions List No. 206 dated 22.9.18 contained the following:-	
			"Temporary Major R. L. H. Ewing, DSO, MC, 42nd. Canadian Battalion, to be Temporary Lieut. Colonel in command of the Battalion, vice Temporary Lieut-Colonel B. McLennan, DSO - 4th August, 1917.	

A2092 Wt. 6128.9/M1293. 750,000. 1/17. D. D. & L. Ltd. Forms/C2118/14.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY
Sheet 2 — 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.~~
(Erase heading not required.)

Army Form C. 2118.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
OCTOBER 1918	5TH	CONT.	On the night of the 5th/6th October winter time came into effect. At 01.00 hours (that is 1 am. summer time) on the 6th, all clocks and watches were put back one hour.	
	6TH		Lieut. C. J. Fletcher reported and was taken on the strength of the Battalion. Lieut. Col. R.L.H. Ewing, DSO, MC. proceeded on leave and command of the Battalion was taken over by Captain (A/Major) R. Willcock, MC.	
	7th		The following decorations were published in Divisional Routine Orders, awarded in connection with Operations on the Amiens front August 8th-13th:-	
			DISTINGUISHED SERVICE ORDER Captain (A/Major) C. B. Topp, MC.	
			BAR TO THE MILITARY CROSS Lieut. J. M. Morris, MC.	
			MILITARY CROSS Captain H. B. Trout, — Captain J. D. MacLeod, Lieut. A. E. Andrews, — Lieut. W. G. Scott, Captain S. G. Baldwin, (C.A.M.C.) attached as M.O. to the Battalion.	
			DISTINGUISHED CONDUCT MEDAL 441179 Pte. Trowse, C. — 418652 Cpl. Franklin, D. J. 145400 Cpl. (L/Sgt) Young, E. — 418487 Sgt. Williamson, J.	
	10th		The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade moved out to QUEANT and the 42nd. Canadian Battalion moved by route march to the QUEANT Area, remaining there until the 20th. This area had been very badly devastated. There was no accommodation of any kind with the exception of an old and dilapidated system of trenches. Here again it was necessary for the men to dig in and construct bivvies for themselves. General training was carried on during the period the Battalion stayed there and specialists classes started. Special attention was paid to the reorganizing and bringing up to strength all the Lewis Gun crews of the Battalion which had suffered heavy casualties in the CAMBRAI Attack.	

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY

Sheet #2 a 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY~~

(*Erase heading not required.*)

Army Form C. 2118.

Place 1918	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
OCTOBER	12th.		R.O. 399 of Headquarters, 1st. Army dated October 18th, 1918, contained the following decorations awarded in connection with the Operations at MONCHY-LE-PREUX - JIG-SAW WOOD - BOIRY-NOTRE DAME, August 26th-27th-28th, 1918. BAR TO DISTINGUISHED SERVICE ORDER Lieut. Col. R. L. H. Ewing, D.S.O., M.C., BAR TO THE MILITARY CROSS Captain Wm. Hale, Jun. M.C (C.A.M.C.) THE MILITARY CROSS Lieut. J. B. T. Montgomerie, " W.J.M. Kavanagh, " W. H. Molson, " J. A. P. Haydon, DISTINGUISHED CONDUCT MEDAL 438286 Pte. K. O. Ritchie, 877647 " J. Russell,	

RB

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY
Sheet 3

42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.~~

(*Erase heading not required.*)

Army Form C. 2118.

Place	Date 1918	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
OCTOBER	15th		On the night of the 14th news was received of the death of Major General L. J. Lipsett, commanding the 4th Imperial Division, killed by a sniper in looking over the front on that date. His funeral took place on the 15th at the cemetery in QUEANT, 100 men from the Battalion and most of the officers attending. The address at the funeral service was made by our Chaplain - Major G. G. D Kilpatrick, D.S.O.	
	16TH		The Brigade was inspected by the Corps Commander. The inspection took place in the field adjacent to the Battalion area. Each Battalion of the Brigade and its Transport was inspected in detail and after the inspection the Corps Commander addressed the Brigade. Proceedings closed with a march past.	
	17th		On this date the Battalion had the honour of an informal visit from His Royal Highness the Prince of Wales who was temporarily attached to the Corps. He visited the Battalion parade ground in the morning and was met by the Officer Commanding. A number of the officers were presented to him and he conversed with several of the men.	
	18th		Leave allotment for 20 OR. for the next week was received. This is a considerable increase on the recent allotment which the Battalion has been receiving.	
	19th		The following N.C.Os. proceeded to England to attend the Cadet School, Bexhill-on-Sea, for Infantry Commissions:- 132028 C.S.M. Hopkins, E. W. — 478363 L/Sgt. Hodge, A.J. 145373 Sgt. Beadley, T. — 478412 A/Cpl. McDonald, D.J. 2075466 A/Cpl. Wilson, W.W. — 480038 Sgt. Hunter, J.	
	20th		The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade moved by bus from the QUEANT Area to the AUBERCHICOURT Area. The 42nd Canadian Battalion proceeded by bus from its billets at QUEANT to AUBERCHICOURT and thence by route march to billets in SOMAIN. Narrative of the Operations covering the period from the 20th when the Battalion arrived in SOMAIN until it subsequently arrived in HASNON is attached hereto.	
	24th		Lieut. Colonel R.L.H. Ewing, DSO, MC returned from leave and assumed command of the Battalion.	

A7092 Wt. W.126-9/M1093 750,000. 1/17. D. D. & L. Ltd. Forms/C2118/14.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY

Sheet 4. 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY~~

(*Erase heading not required.*)

Army Form C. 2118.

Place 1918	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
OCTOBER	25th		A wire was received from the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade announcing the fact that 2075443 Pte. T. Dinesen had been awarded the VICTORIA CROSS for extreme gallantry in action at PARVILLERS on August 11th/13th	
	26th		Routine orders of the 3rd. Canadian Division under date of October 25th announced the following decoration:- DISTINGUISHED SERVICE ORDER Hon. Major G. G. D. Kilpatrick,	
	27th		The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade was relieved in the line by the 8th Canadian Infantry Brigade, the 42nd. Canadian Battalion being relieved by the 2nd. C.M.R. The Battalion proceeded by route march from the line in front of CONDE to billets in HASNON. Casualties for the tour were:- KILLED: 3 OR - 1 while on Command; DIED OF WOUNDS: 3 OR; WOUNDED: 16 OR	
	30th		Readjustment of the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade took place and the 42nd. Canadian Battalion proceeded from billets in HASNON to billets in ROSSEL DU PRUSSIEN.	

Lieut. Colonel,
Cmdg. 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

A5091 Wt. W.12859/M1293. 750,000. 1/17. D. D. & L. Ltd. Forms/C2118/14.

42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. Secret
Operation Order No. 116 Copy No. 19
By
Captain (A/Major) R. Allcock, M.C.

Reference Maps -
57.c. 1/40,000
51.b.1/40,000
Valenciennes 12 1/100,000 20th October 1918

1. Information — The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade will move by bus to the AUBERCHICOURT Area on the 20th October.

2. Intention — The 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. will move from billets in D.1.c. to billets in AUBERCHICOURT area embussing at Cross Roads D.1.d.5.5. QUIANT at 09.30 hours.

3. Parade — The Battalion will fall in ready to move off on Battalion parade ground at 08.00 hours.

4. Advance Parties — Scout Officer and three scouts will proceed by bus to AUBERCHICOURT Area embussing at C.6.d.5.1 at 07.00 hours.

5. Baggage etc. — Officers bedrolls, mess boxes, orderly room supplies and bivvies will be piled alongside the road at C.6.d.5.1. at 08.45 hours.

6. Kitchens — Kitchens will be ready to move off at 07.00 hours

7. Transport — Transport will proceed under Brigade convoy passing the starting point at Cross Roads V.30.b. 30.95 at 08.21 hours.

8. Marching out states — Marching out states will be handed into the Orderly Room at 08.30 hours.

W.G. Baber,
Lieut. Asst. Adjt.

Issued by runner at 0115

Copies to	1. 7th C.I.B.	11	L.O.O.
	2. C.O.	12.	B.O.
	3. 2 i/c	13	Quartermaster
	4. Adjutant	14	Transport O.
	5,6,7,8 O.Cs. A,B,C,D Coys	15	M.O.
	9 Sig. O.	16	R.S.M.
	10 Scout O.	17,18,19	War Diary
		20	File.

2/

Operation Order No. 215
by
Captain (A/Major) R. Willcock, M.C.
Cmdg, 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.

SECRET
Copy No....19

Reference Maps Sheet 44 1/40,000
31.H. 1/40,000 1st October 1918.

1. Information — The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade will march today to the area WANDIGNIES-HAMAGE-CATAIN and will be prepared to take over the front of the 1st Canadian Infantry Brigade on the 2nd inst.

2. Intention — The 42nd Canadian Battalion will move from billets in B.8.c. to billets in CATAIN by march route today.

3. Parade — The Battalion will fall in ready to move off head of the column at the cross roads at entrance to present billets, facing east, at 09.15 hours.

4. Starting Point — Starting point will be at cross roads B.18. a.7.7. The Battalion will pass the starting point at 10.10 hours. 5[illegible] yards distance will be maintained between units after passing the starting point and 3[illegible] yards distance will be maintained between Companies.

5. Advance Parties — One officer and 2 O.R. per Company and Headquarters will report to Mairie Office, SOMAIN at 07.3[illegible] hours to meet representative of the Brigade staff to proceed to billeting area.

6. Kitchens — Kitchens will be ready to move off at 08.45 hours.

7. Baggage etc — Officers' bedrolls, mess boxes, orderly room supplies will be piled at the Q.M. stores at 0830 hours.

8. Transport — Transport will accompany Battalion on the march. Unless further orders are received it will not proceed in advance of the western edge of BOIS DES ECULUSETTES and standings will be located in area T.12. central.

9. Marching out States — Marching out states will be handed into the orderly room at 10.45 hours.

F.C. Baber,
Lieut. Asst. Adjt.

Issued by runner at 0130

Copies to
1 7th C.I.B.
2 C.O.
3 2 i/c
4 Adjutant
5,6,7,8, C,CaA,B,C,D Cos
9 Sig. O.
10 Scout O.
11 L.G.O.
12 B.O.
13 Quartermaster
14 T.O.
15 M.O.
16 R.S.M.
17,18,19 War Diary
20 File

3/

Operation Order No. 216
by
Captain (A/Major) R. Willcock, M.C.
Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

SECRET
Copy No....19.

.....22nd.Oct. 1918.

Ref. Maps. 44 S.E. 1/20,000
44 1/40,000

1. Information — The 1st Canadian Infantry Brigade is holding general line along Railway from P.14.c. to P.34.a. On 22nd October 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade will pass through 1st Canadian Infantry Brigade. The 9th Canadian Infantry Brigade on right will co-operate in the advance and pass through 3rd Canadian Infantry Brigade. The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade objective will be RED LINE as shown on 44 S.E. 1/20,000 The advance will be conducted will be conducted by the R.C.R. on right sub section, and the 42nd Canadian Battalion on left sub section. The 49th. Canadian Battalion (E.R.) will be in Brigade support and the P.P.C.L.I. in Brigade reserve.

2. Intention — The 42nd Canadian Battalion R.H.C. will leave billets in CATAINE and pass through 1st Canadian Infantry Brigade at 07.00 hours.

3. Route — CATAINE-HASNON-LA COLINIERE to south of MONT des BRUYARES thence to final objective by route chosen by advance guard.

4. Advance Guard — (a) Screen of Scouts. The Battalion Scouts under Battalion Scout officer will leave CATAINE at 06.00 hours:
(b) Van Guard.One platoon of 'B' Company will constitute van guard and will leave CATAINE at 06.30 hours:
(c) Support. 'B' Company less one platoon will constitute support and leave CATAINE at 06.45 hours.

5. Main Body — Remainder of Battalion will fall in ready to move off at 06.45 hours, head of column at fork roads O.34.a.0.8.

6. Transport. — Transport will be divided into A and B Echelons-
A Echelon will accompany the Battalion;
B Echelon will remain in present area.

7. Attachments — 1 Section 31 Battery C.F.A. will proceed in rear of Battalion, 2 Sections are at disposal of Bn. further in rear.
1 Battery No.2 Company C.M.G.C. will proceed in rear of main body. 8th Bn. C.E. are allotted to Brigade for operation.
1 Troop B Squadron C.L.H. willbe allotted to Bn. 2 Stokes Guns will be attached to Bn.

W.C.Baber,
Lieut.Asst.Adjt.

Copies to.

1. 7th C.I.B.
2 C.O.
11 L.G.O.
12 Q.M.
I.T.O.

3. 2 i/c
4. Adj.
5.6.7.8.O.C.A,B,C,D Cos.
9. Sig. O.
10. Scout O.

13 T.O.
14.M.O.
15 Chaplain.
16.R. S. M.
17,18,19 War Diary
20. File.

Operation Order No. 317 SECRET
by Copy No. 18
Lieut. Col. R.L.H.Ewing, D.S.O., M.C.
Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.
Reference Map Sheet 44 1/40,000 October 27th 1918.

1. Information. The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade will be relieved by the 8th Canadian Infantry Brigade on the night of the 27th/28th October 1918.

2. Intention The 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. will be relieved by the 2nd C.M.R. Battalion and on completion of relief will take over billets vacated by them in HASNON with Battalion Headquarters at Billet No.186.

3. Advance Parties. Advance Parties of one officer and six O.R. will report at approximately 09.00 hours 27th. inst. to Town Major, HASNON, at Billet No.143 to take over new billets. This party will be arranged by Rear details.

4. Route. Companies will relieve by platoons and will assemble at the ration dump, Q.15.a.70.30 where one scout per company will meet them and guide Companies out. Company pipers will meet their Companies at the junction of the ST AMAND Road and railway in P.21.a.10.60.

5. Guides 2 guides per platoon will report to Lieut. Proven at ration dump, Q.15.a.70.30 to guide the platoons of the incoming Battalion to the line

6. Lewis Guns Trench kits etc. Lewis Guns, trench kits and tools will be deposited at the following points where limbers will meet them -
"B" Company, ration dump, Q.15.a.70.30.
"A"."C"."D" Companies advanced Battalion Headquarters Q.10.d.70.60.
Headquarters Company at Battalion Headquarters Q.14.c.10.70.

7. Transport. Transport will move under its own arrangement to HASNON and take over standings vacated by the 2nd C.M.R. Battalion.

8. Completion of Relief Completion of relief will be notified these Headquarters by wire as follows - "Your O.O. No.317 received at ...."

9. Completion of Move. Completion of move will be reported by runner to new Battalion Headquarters at Billet No.186, HASNON.

10. Acknowledge.

W.C.Baber,
Lieut. Asst. Adjt.

Copies to 1 7th C.I.B.
2 C.O.
3 2 i/c 4 Adj. 5,6,7,8. Cos. 9. Sig.O.
10.Scout.O. 11 L.G.O. 12. Q.M. 13. T.O.
14. M.O. 15. R.S.M. 16,17,18 War Diary. 19 File.

5/ Operation Order No. 210 SECRET 18

by

Lieut. Col. R.L.H.Ewing, D.S.O., M.C. Copy No.....

Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

Reference Map 44 1/40,000 ..... October 30th 1918.

1. Information — Redistribution of the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade will take place on the 30th inst.

2. Intention — The 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. will move from its present billets in HASNON to billets in RAISMES.

3. Advance Parties. — Advance parties of one officer and 2 O.R. per Company and the Signal officer and 2 O.R. per Headquarters will report to the Brigade Billeting Officer at V.17.a.0.0., RAISMES, at 10.00 hours to take over new billets.

4. Move — The Battalion will move independently by Companies, Companies passing the starting point - The Square, HASNON - at the following Hours -

A	Company	10.00	hours
B	"	10.10	"
C	"	10.20	"
H.Q.	"	10.30	"
D	"	10.40	"

5. Route — Square HASNON - LES CORBETS - RUE DE BOIS - RAISMES. Battalion Scouts will be posted at principal corners.

6. Dress — Dress will be heavy marching order - Great Coat carried in pack, blanket and rubber sheet rolled and carried in bandolier round the pack. Steel helmet on pack.

7. Lewis Guns etc. — Lewis Guns, officers' bed rolls etc. will be piled as follows at 11.00 hours -

A and B Cos. at A Cos. Headquarters.
C Company at C Co's Headquarters
D and H.Q. at D Co's Headquarters
Headquarters at Headquarters.
Orderly Room at Headquarters.

8. Kitchens — Kitchens will be ready to move off at 12.00 hrs.

9. Transport — Transport will accompany the Battalion.

10. Rear Party — Rear party of one N.C.O. and 4 O.R. per Company and in addition one officer from B Coy. will remain behind to hand over the present billets to the incoming Battalion of the 6th. Canadian Infantry Brigade.

11. Completion of Move — Completion of move will be reported by runner to the new Battalion Headquarters, RAISMES.

12. ACKNOWLEDGE.

W.C.Baber.
Lieut. Asst. Adjt.

Copies to 1. 7th C.I.B. 2 C.O. 3 2 i/c 4 Adjt.
5/8 Cos. 9 Sig. O. 10 Scout O. 11 L.G.O.
12 Q.M. 13 T.O. 14 M.O. 15 R.S.M.
16,17,18, War Diary 19 File.

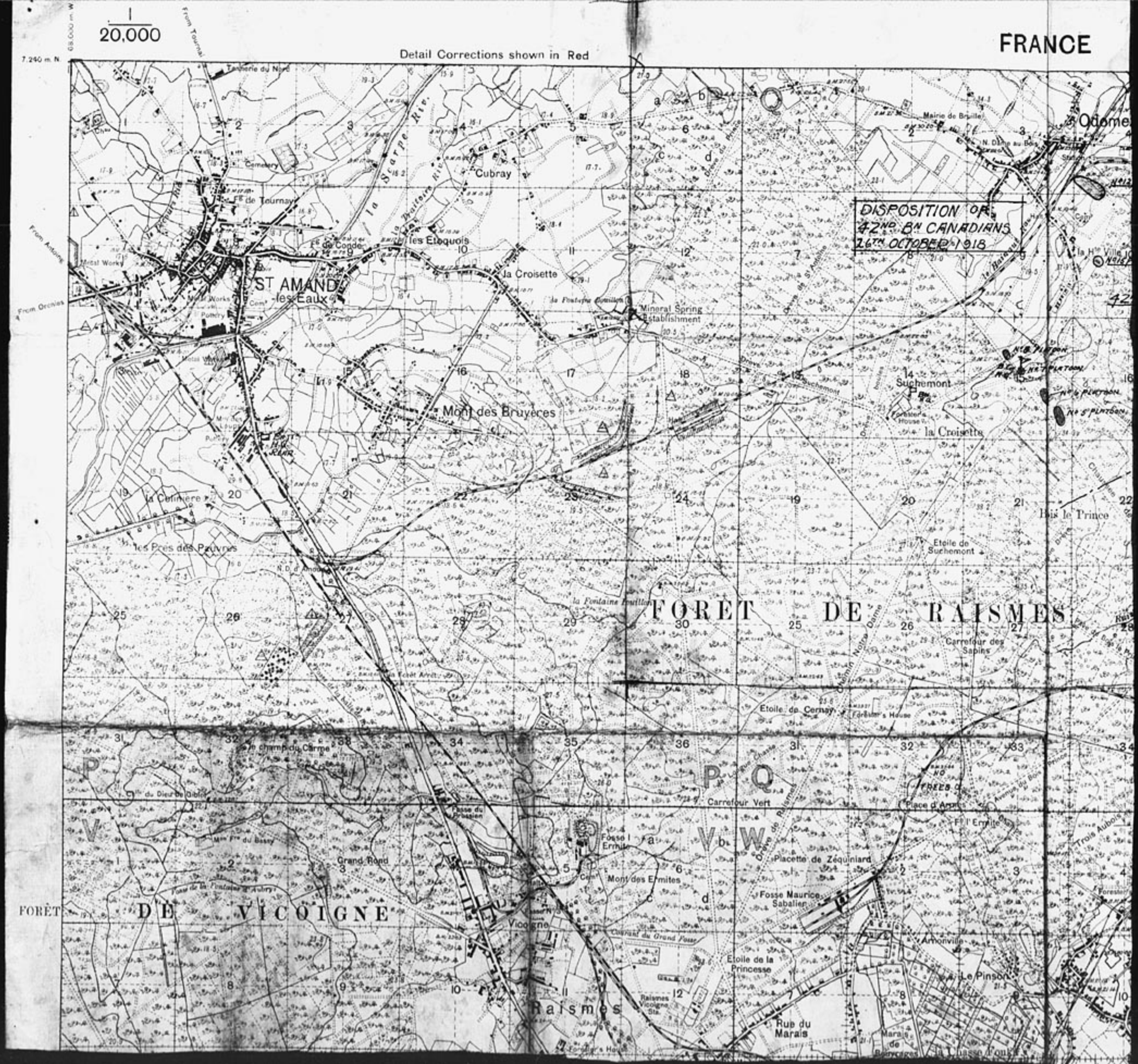
1

MAP

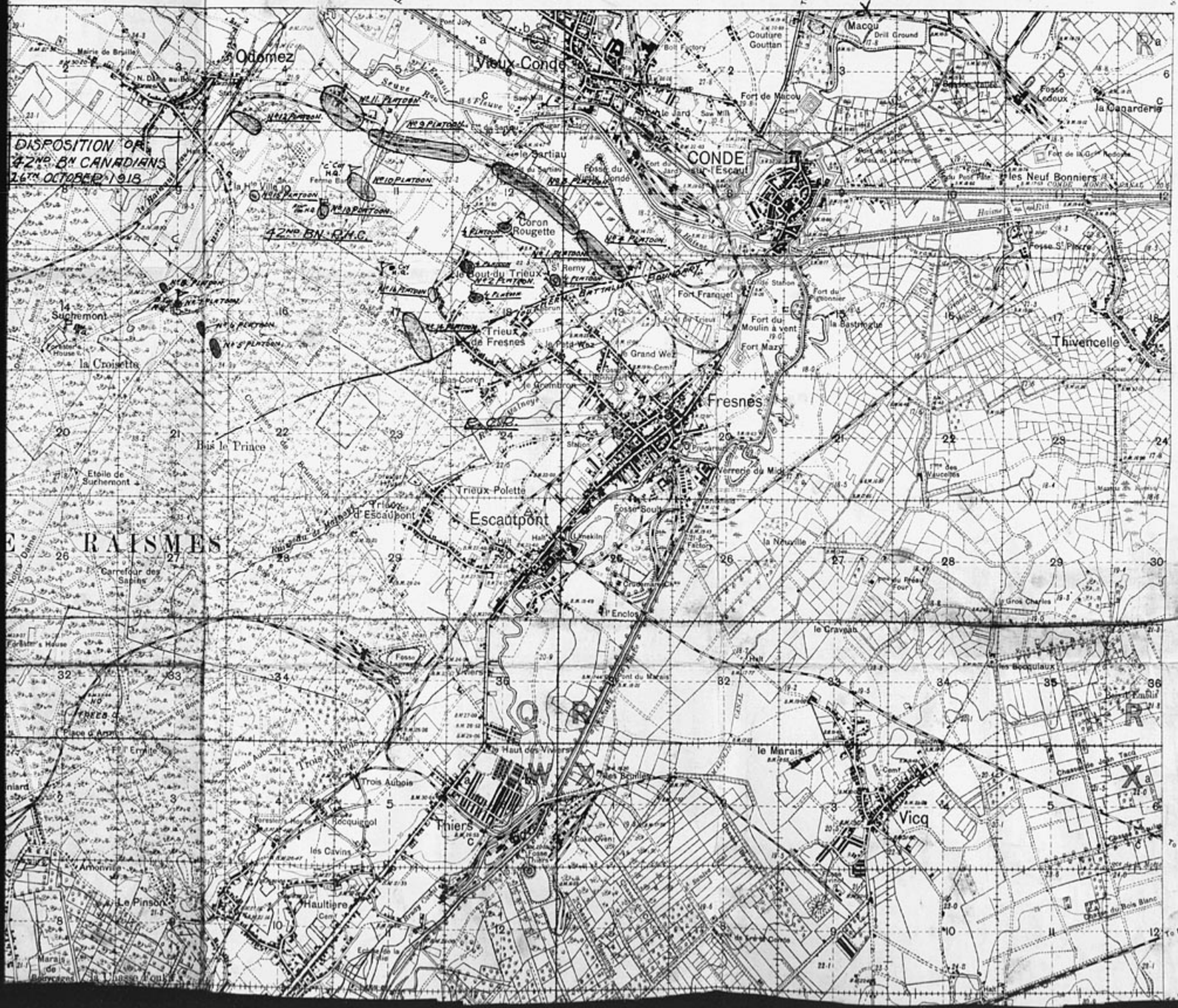
WAR DIARY

42ND CDN.INF.BATTALION

OCTOBER,1918


1/20,000
FRANCE
Detail Corrections shown in Red
DISPOSITION OF 42ND BN CANADIANS 26TH OCTOBER 1918
ST AMAND les Eaux
Cubray
les Etoquois
la Croisette
Mont des Bruyères
Mineral Spring Establishment
Suchemont
la Croisette
Bois le Prince
Etoile de Suchemont
la Cerisière
les Prés des Pauvres
FORÊT DE RAISMES
Carrefour des Sapins
Etoile de Cernay
Carrefour Vert
Place d'Armes
Placette de Zéquiniard
Fosse Maurice Sabalier
Mont des Ermites
Grand Rond
FORÊT DE VICOIGNE
Vicoigne
Raismes
Etoile de la Princesse
Rue du Marais
Arnonville
Le Pinson
Odomez
Mairie de Brillé
la Scarpe Riv.
la Traitoire Riv.
la Haisnes Riv.
From Tournai
From Antoing
From Orchies

FRANCE EDITION 3 SHEET 44.. S. E.



DISPOSITION
MAP " " ".

COPY FOR WAR DIARY.

OCTOBER 1918

6

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.
Narrative of Operations covering period from
October 20th - October 26th, 1918
Ref. Map:- Sheet 44 - 1/40,000.

---oOo---

The Battalion had arrived in SOMAIN at about 20.00 hours after travelling by bus from QUEANT to AUBERCHICOURT and thence by march route to SOMAIN.

At 01.00 hours on the 21st. orders were received from Brigade to proceed at 09.00 hours by march route to CATAINE. The route followed was: SOMAIN - ERRE - WANDIGNIES-HAMAGE - CATAINE.

The scenes en route were unique and interesting. These towns and the small villages between them had only been liberated from the enemy within the preceeding forty-eight hours after four years of captivity, and the joy of the inhabitants was indescribable. The entire route was thronged by them and every possible visible demonstration of their joy at their release was given. CATAINE was reached at 17.00 and billets taken over from the 3rd. Canadian Bn.

At 01.30 hours on the 22nd. orders were received that the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade would advance and leap-frog the 1st. Brigade, the latter holding the general line on the railway in P. 14. c - P. 34. a. The advance was to be conducted on the right by the Royal Canadian Regiment - on the left by the 42nd. Canadian Bn., R. H. C.; the 49th Canadian Battalion (E. R.) being in support, and the P. P. C. L. I. in reserve.

The Brigade objective was the Bridge Heads over the JARD Canal in VIEUX-CONDE and CONDE, the task of the Brigade, therefore, being to advance through and mop-up the FORET DE RAISMES. The Battalion had attached to it 1 Battery of C. R. A., 1 Battery of Machine Guns, 2 Stokes Guns, and in addition "B" Squadron, Canadian Light Horse, less two Troops.

At 07.00 hours a start was made, the Scouts proceeding in advance of the Battalion followed by B. H. HQ. A and C Companies at intervals of 200 yards. The route followed was CATAINE - HASNON and along the HASNON-LA COLINIERE Road until the fork roads in P. 20. c were reached. Here the Battalion divided into two forces, the right force, consisting of half the Battalion Scouts under Sergt. Smith, a vanguard of one platoon of B Company, followed by the main body - the balance of B Company and A Company. They proceeded along the road running through P. 20. d. to its junction with the railway, thence along the railway, entering the forest in P. 27. a. The left force consisting of the balance of the Battalion Scouts under Lieut. Cave, a vanguard of one platoon from D Coy., followed by the main body composed of C Company and the balance of D Company, proceeded along the road through P. 20. a. across the railway and main ST. AMAND Road, thence along the road running through P. 14. d. and P. 15. c, entering the forest at MONT DES BRUYERES. Battalion Headquarters was established at Billet 229 on the main St. AMAND-RAISMES Road.

The village of MONT DES BRUYERES was reported clear of the enemy by 10.30 hours and both forces reached the road running North and South through P. 18. c and P. 24. a. & c. by noon, where a short half of fifteen minutes was made. Up to this road no opposition on our immediate front had been encountered, but an enemy machine gun firing from LA CROISETTE caused D Company one casualty. One platoon of D Company remained in old trenches in P. 16. d. to watch the left flank opposite LA CROISETTE until relieved by a section of Machine Guns at Noon.

From the road in P. 24. a. & c. the right force advanced through the forest until the road in Q. 20. a. & d. was reached, and then followed the roads to the first night's objective in Q. 15. a. & d. and Q. 22. a.

The left force followed the railroad track and when they reached Q. 14. a. were on the enemy's tail and received considerable rifle and machine gun fire from the open ground between the edge of the forest in Q. 8. d. and the village of ODOMEZ. The progress of the left force from Q. 14. a. forward was slow but by 16.00 hours the

Battalion occupied the general line on the road running S.E. through Q.15. central and Q.22.a.

Owing to the failure of the Imperial Brigade on our left to advance during the day beyond the road running through P.14.b., 15.c. and 9.c. the left flank of the Battalion was in the air. The Machine Gun Battery attached to the Battalion was therefore established on the high ground in MONT DES BRUYERES, facing North, to protect this flank. At the request of Division a patrol of 1 Officer and 3 O.R. was sent out to ST. AMAND and vicinity to try and get in touch with the troops on our left, and to ascertain as far as possible the disposition of their line. The patrol reported on return that their approximate line was along the road as given above.

Orders were received from Brigade that night that the R.C.R. and 42nd. Battalions would continue to advance on the morning of the 23rd. with the object of securing the Bridge Head crossing the canal. Further orders were given that the main body was not to cross the canal without definite orders to this effect from Brigade.

At 06.00 hours on the 23rd. A Company continued the advance on the right and C Company on the left with D Company in support and B Company in reserve. After many interesting skirmishes between our Scouts and enemy machine guns and snipers during the day, our line was advanced to LA HTE. VILLE, road running through Q.10.d. and Q.11.a. and LE BOUT DU TRIEUX by the evening of the 23rd.

On the morning of the 24th the advance was again continued and by the evening of the 24th the line ran from LA HTE. VILLE along Eastern edge of BOIS LE PRINCE to a post in Q.12.c.3.1. The enemy rearguard were at this time holding the railway line through R.14.c. - 13.a.b.d. - 17.c. and Q.12.a.b. & d.

On the night of the 24th instructions were received from Brigade that a policy of defence would be adopted. The railway line through R.14.c - 13.a.b. & d - 17.c. Q.12.a.b. & d. to be made good.

On the morning of the 25th the Scouts again went forward and by noon the railway was reported clear of the enemy. Further advance on our front was impossible as the area North-east of the Railway had been flooded by the ESCAUT RIVER. The width of the flooded area varied from 600 to 1,000 yards on our Battalion front.

On the night of the 25th orders were received that on the 26th the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade would be relieved by the 8th Canadian Infantry Brigade, the 42nd. Canadian Battalion being relieved by the 2nd. C.M.R.

On the 26th at 17.00 hours this relief took place, and the Battalion marched out independently by Companies from the line to HASNON, there taking over the billets vacated by the 2nd. C.M.R., the route used being the railway through P.18. - 23 - 22 and the LA COLINIERE-HASNON Road. The Battalion was settled in billets in HASNON by 21.00 hours.

Casualties during the Operation:

	KILLED	W.	No of WOUNDED
Officers	Nil	Nil	Nil
Other Ranks	* 3	3	16
TOTALS	3	3	16
		TOTAL	22

* 1 while on Command

Ground captured included:

BOIS LE PRINCE
VILLAGE MONT DE BRUYERES
" LE HTE VILLE
" LE BOUT DU TRIEUX

The advance of the Battalion during the first days operations covered a distance of 6,500 yards; the total advance of the Battalion during the entire operation being approximately 10,000 yards.

Roger Ed. Ewing.

Lieut. Colonel,
Cmdg. 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.

CONFIDENTIAL

W A R D I A R Y

----oooOooo----

-:- O F -:-

43rd CAN CANADIAN BATTALION 3rd CANADIAN DIVISION

FROM 1st Nov TO 30th Nov 1918

-----oooOooo------

VOLUME 38

with appendix 'A'

WAR DIARY

42nd Canadian Battalion 3rd Cdn. Division,

from 1st to30th November, 1918.

Volume 38.

Diary Text	6 Pages.
Appendix A.	42nd Bn. O.O. 219, Instructions for the taking over of Eastern front of 8th C.I.B. by 7th C.I.B. on night 6th and 7th November,

a

38

ORIGINAL

CONFIDENTIAL

WAR DIARY

NOVEMBER 1918.

42nd CANADIAN BATTALION

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY
42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY~~

(Erase heading not required.)

Army Form C. 2118.

Place 1918	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
NOVEMBER	1st-5th		The Battalion in billets at FOSSE DE PRUSSIEN, VICOIGNE. Usual training was carried on.	
			Orders were received that the 7th Cdn. Infantry Brigade would take over the front of the 8th Canadian Inf. Brigade on the night of the 6th/7th November.	
			The Battalion moved by Route March from its billets in FOSSE DE PRUSSIEN, to billets in ONNAING via ANZIN - VALENCIENNES, the move being complete at 12.00 Hours.	
			In the afternoon orders were received that the Brigade would not take over from the 8th Cdn. Infantry Brigade on the night of the 6th/7th but would move on the 7th to the QUIEVRECHAIN-CRESPIN Area and take over from the 8th Cdn. Infantry Brigade at dusk on the 7th.	
	7th		The Battalion moved from its billets in ONNAING by Route March to billets in QUIEVRECHAIN, the move being complete at 14.45 Hours.	
	8th.		The Battalion moved forward to billets in THULIN, arriving there at dusk.	
			Four casualties (wounded) occurred from enemy shell fire immediately after the Battalion had arrived.	
	9th.		The Battalion was ordered again to move forward by Route March to JEMAPPES which was reached at 19.00 Hours. The route was via BOUSSU - HORNU - QUAREGNON. Throughout the whole march the streets were lined with cheering civilians who gave the Battalion a tremendous reception.	
	10th.		On the morning of the 10th the Battalion relieved the P.P.C.L.I. and took over a Company of The R.C.R. The area extended from the CONDE-MONS Canal to the HYON-QUESMES Road in Q.13.a. As soon as this was completed the Battalion commenced to press the attack on MONS from the Western and Southern outskirts and penetrated the city in the neighbourhood of the Railway Station at 01.00 Hours on the 11th - A full report of these Operations is attached.	
			During the afternoon, while the enemy were shelling JEMAPPES, the Battalion sufferred most unfortunate casualties in its Transport Lines. An H.V. Shell burst in the Farrier's shop killing two men outright and wounding ten others, four of whom afterwards died.	

D. D. & L., London, E.C.
(A10056) Wt W3300/P713 750,000 4/17 Sch ... C2118/16

2319

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY

- 2 - 42nd Cdn. Battalion,

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY~~

(Erase heading not required.)

Army Form C. 2118.

Place	Date 1918	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
NOVEMBER	10th	cont.	of wounds. The majority of these men had come with the Battalion from Montreal and had been with it for thirty-seven months in France.	
	11th		By daybreak on the 11th the whole city of MONS had been mopped-up and we had established outposts on the high ground on the Eastern outskirts. Battalion Headquarters were established in the Hotel de Ville in the Grand Place. The Pipe Band played its way into the city about 07.00 Hours and created tremendous enthusiasm. Thousands of civilians lined the streets and the Grand Place, and the Battalion was given such a welcome as it had never seen before. Men, women and children vied with one another in expressing their hospitality - hot coffee, cognac and wines were distributed with the utmost generosity. Soldiers were everywhere embraced and kissed. In a few moments the whole city was bedecked with flags, flying from every window.	
			Lieut. L. H. Biggar and Lieut. J. W. Cave were the first officers of the Battalion to actually enter the Hotel de Ville, where they went forward to establish Headquarters and to install telephone communication. As soon as they entered the "Gold Book" was taken from the vaults where it had lain for over four years and they had the honour of being the first British troops to sign it, the only other entry in this book up to that time was that of King Albert of Belgium who had signed it in 1913, on his first visit to MONS after ascending the Throne.	
			At about 9. O'Clock official word was received that the Armistice had been signed, and that hostilities would cease at 11.00 Hours. Instructions were immediately sent out to Companies that no further offensive operations would take place but that all precautions would be taken to defend the line then held, outposts would be established and the Companies distributed in depth.	
			At 11. O'Clock - the hour of "Cease fire" - in the Grand Place, the Mayor presented Brigadier-General J. A. Clark, DSO, G.O.C., 7th Canadian Inf. Brigade, with the Keys of the City in honour of its capture by units of his Brigade. Such elements of the Brigade as could be withdrawn from the line were formed up en masse and after the celebrations were completed there was a formal march past which was led by our Pipe Band. We were only able to have one Company and part of Headquarters on this parade as three of our Companies were still holding the Outpost Line and had not at that time been relieved. The great square was filled with civilians and the troops got tremendous applause as they marched out.	

D. D. & L., London, E.C.
(A10066) Wt W3300/P713 750,000 2/18 Sch. 52 Forms/C2118/16

2320

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY

- 3 - 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY~~

(Erase heading not required.)

Army Form C. 2118.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
NOVEMBER 1918	11th	Cont.	At 3.30 in the afternoon Lieut. General Sir Arthur Currie, K.C.B., K.C.M.G., commanding the Canadian Corps, rode into the city with his Staff, escorted by a body of the 5th Lancers - men who had fought at MONS in 1914. Formed up in the Grand Place was a half-Company of troops from every Unit in the 3rd. Canadian Division. General Currie's appearance provoked the wildest enthusiasm from the civilians who were packed solidly on the four sides of the Square and crowded on the balconies and windows. The Bands played the Belgium National Anthem which the people sang with great fervour. The Corps Commander was met by the Mayor, the City Fathers and other prominent citizens. He was formally welcomed and presented with an Address. Through an interpreter he conveyed the congratulations of the Corps to the Citizens and then presented the City with a Canadian Flag. During the afternoon the Companies holding the Outpost Line were relieved by Units of the 9th Cdn. Infantry Brigade, brought into the City, and the whole Battalion was billetted in the Caserne d'Infantrie. The Officers had their quarters on the Rue de la Grand Triperie. The day was the most memorable in the history of the 42nd. Cdn. Battalion by virtue of the fact that it was our good fortune to have the honour to capture the most historic City in the annals of the war.	
	12th		During the fighting about MONS on the afternoon of the 10th four Other Ranks:- 418571 L/Cpl. Jones, B.R. 793792 Pte. Daigle, J.A. 228792 Pte. Mills, T. 466663 " Brigden, B. were unfortunately killed while attempting to surround and capture enemy machine gun posts which were operating on the Eastern edge of the Canal. All funeral arrangements were taken over by the City, and it may safely be stated that no other British Soldiers had had such an elaborate and memorable funeral as these. Very fine oak coffins were provided. The bodies lay in state in the Hotel de Ville from 10. am to 2 pm. and the citizens of MONS paid their respects by presenting many beautiful floral tributes. The funeral procession left the Hotel de Ville at 2.30 and proceeded by the Rue d'Havre to the Cemetery. The Services were conducted by Major G.G.D. Kilpatrick, DSO., our former Chaplain, and a Firing Party of 25 O.R. was	

D. D. & L., London, E.C.
(A1006) Wt W2900/P793 750,000 4/18 Sch. 52 Forms/C2118/16

2321

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY
or 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(Erase heading not required.)

Army Form C. 2118.

Place 1918	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
NOVEMBER	12th	Cont.	furnished by the Battalion. Addresses were given by the Burgomaster and the Parliamentary Representative of the City. Major-General E. O. W. Loomis, C.B., C.M.G., D.S.O., commanding the 3rd. Canadian Division, responded to the Addresses and extended to the people of MONS the thanks of the Division. Their graves are placed in a commanding position on the right of the heroic men of the First Imperial Division who gave their lives in an effort to stem the German advance in the first days of the war. The City is erecting a marble monument to their memory.	
	13th-14th		Usual cleaning up parades were held. Pay Parades were held in the afternoon of the 13th and Bath Parades on the 14th. In the afternoon of the 14th the Officers attended a Divisional 5 O'Clock Tea and Theatre Party in the Hotel de Ville. A number of prominent citizens were invited as the Division's guests and after Tea the party attended the Theatre when "The Bumbells" presented "H.M.S. Pinafore."	
	15th		General Sir H. S. Horne, K.C.B., K.C.M.G., commanding the First Army, entered the City and was met by the Mayor and City Fathers, and formally welcomed. A Guard of Honour was furnished by the 7th Canadian Inf. Brigade, each Battalion providing 125 Other Ranks. After receiving the Freedom of the City there was a march past in which Units of every Division in the First Army participated.	
	16th		Thanksgiving Service was held in the Theatre. All Units in the 3rd. Canadian Division were represented and the Battalion furnished six Other Ranks.	
	17th-26th		The Battalion remained at MONS during this period. Parades were held daily and the Syllabus of Training included Route Marches in Heavy Marching Order and Smartening-Up Drill, with special classes for men deficient in Arm and Squad Drill. During this period all Steel Helmets and Small Box Respirators were packed and turned in to Quartermaster's Stores, from where they were shipped to the 3rd. D.M.T. Company for transportation, to accompany us on the march. Football matches were played with teams from the 2nd. C.M.R., P.P.C.L.I., and the	

D. D. & L., London, E.C.
(A10066) Wt W5300/P773 750,000 1/18 Sch. 52 Forms/C2118/16

2322

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY
or 42nd. Canadian Bn. R.H.C.

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.~~

(*Erase heading not required.*)

Army Form C. 2118.

Place 1918	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
NOVEMBER	17th-26th		58th Battalion, all of which we won.	
			On the 21st. Lieut. Col. R.L.H. Ewing, D.S.O., M.C. was present at the celebrations in BRUSSELS when the King of Belgium made his triumphal entry.	
			It was expected that the Brigade would move on its march to Germany on the 20th but this was postponed until the 23rd, when the move was again cancelled. It was originally intended that thirty-two British Divisions should march to the Rhine but this was later changed and only eleven Divisions were sent forward, including the 1st. and 2nd. Canadians.	
			On the 24th the 3rd. Canadian Division was transferred from Canadian Corps to the 4th Corps.	
			In the afternoon of the 26th the Battalion moved from the Caserne d'Infantrie to the following billets: H.Q. & B Company - Ecole Moyenne, Rue de Fetis A Company - Ecole de Frere, Rue de Gades C " - Ecole Frere, Rue Notre Dame de Debonaire D " - Ecole Cour de Bailly, do do	
	27th		The King of Belgium paid an official visit to the City of MONS. A Guard of Honour was furnished by the 3rd. Canadian Division, one Battalion in each Brigade providing 100 men. Our Battalion was accorded the honour of representing the 7th Cdn. Infantry Brigade.	
			During the month of November the following Decorations were awarded to Other Ranks:- for the Operations near CAMBRAI 29th/30th September.	
			<u>2ND. BAR TO THE MILITARY MEDAL</u> 132241 Sergt. G. Smith, MM. & Bar <u>BAR TO THE MILITARY MEDAL</u> 418412 Pte. G.J. McDonald, MM.	

D. D. & L., London, E.C.
(A1246) Wt W3500/P313 750,000 4/18 Sch. 52 Forms/C2118/16

2323

WAR DIARY

- 6 -

42nd. Canadian Battn., R.H.C.

Army Form C. 2118.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY~~

(Erase heading not required.)

Place 1918	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
NOVEMBER	27th-30th Cont.			

THE MILITARY MEDAL

136638 Pte. Hopley, E.R.	3080161 Pte. Brandon, T.V.	838579 Pte. Jackson, M.T.
418073 Sgt. McTavish, N.	1030366 " Lavis, C.	164150 " MacKinnon, N.B.
454751 Pte. Forrester, J.	193560 L/C. Duggan, M.J.	123980 Cpl. Chase, A.
436536 Cpl. Lewison, R.	408079 Sgt. Fordham A.G.	418043 Sgt. Adamson, D.
3075441 Pte. McDonald, F.D.	458227 Pte. King, G.	192226 Pte. Gibson, A.
418107 " Manley, W.	877640 " Russell, W.J.	135773 " Lainson, A.
901405 Cpl. Leithead, D.	2075446 " Wilson, W.W.	419099 " Fairbairn, E.
144349 Pte. McDonald, D.	193778 Sgt. Studholme, F.R.	418578 Cpl. Freeman, J.
685014 " LeBuffe, R.W.	133131 Cpl. Herron, J.A.	

During the month the undermentioned reinforcements reported to the Battalion.

Lieut. W. A. Holley,
" A. W. MacMinn,
" R. Holmden,
" L. H. Benskin,
Capt. D. W. Christie,
Capt. L. H. Black, MC and 126 Other Ranks.

Casualties for the month were:-

	KILLED	DIED OF WOUNDS	WOUNDED
Officers			1
Other Ranks	6	4	22

Lieut. Colonel,
Cmdg. 42nd. Canadian Battn., R.H.C.

D. D. & L., London, E.C.
(A1006) Wt W3300/P713 750,000 4/18 Sch. 52 Forms/C2118/16

2324

SECRET

'A'

42nd. ~~Canadi~~an Battalion, R.H.C. COPY NO. 17

OPERATION ORDER # 219

Ref. Maps/ Sheet 44 - 1/40,000
51a. 6b

1.
INFORMATION — The 7th Canadian Inf. Brigade will take over the Eastern front of the 8th Canadian Inf. Brigade on the night of the 6/7th November, 1918. The Brigade and 72 Company, 3rd. C.M.G. Battalion will move to the ONNAING Area on November 6th 1918.

Further instructions regarding taking over the line from the 8th C.I. Brigade to be issued.

2.
INTENTION — The 42nd. Canadian Bn. will move from billets in VICOIGNE to billets in ONNAING Area on the morning of the 6th November.

3.
ADVANCE PARTIES — Advance Parties will proceed as follows:

Lieut. A.B. Proven will proceed on horseback to ONNAING at 06.00 hours and make details of billeting arrangements in the Area X. 14. d. and X. 20. b. After making arrangements he will report to Brigade Billeting Officer at Billet 176, opposite Church in X. 21. b. at 09.30 hours, when any necessary adjustments will be made.

1 NCO and 4 OR per Company and H.Q. will proceed at 06.00 hours to ONNAING and report to Lieut. Proven on arrival there at junction of the roads in X. 21. a. 0. 2.

4.
PARADE — The Battalion will fall in, ready to move off, at 06.45 hours, head of column opposite Quartermaster's Stores, facing South.

5.
ORDER OF MARCH — Headquarters - A - B - C - D Companies - Intervals of 200 yards will be maintained between Companies.

6.
STARTING POINT & TIME — The Battalion will pass the Starting Point - V. 4. d. 40. at 07.10 hours.

7.
ROUTE — VALENCIENNES to ONNAING via main VALENCIENNES-MONS Rd.

8.
DRESS, OFFS. BED ROLLS KITCHENS MESS BOXES ETC. — As per instructions already issued.

9.
TRANSPORT — Transport will accompany the Battalion

10.
WATCHES — Watches will be synchronised with the Bn. Orderly Room at 06.00 hours.

11.
MARCHING OUT STATES — Marching Out States will be turned in to Orderly Room at 06.00 hours.

12.
REPORTS — Completion of move will be reported by runner to new Battalion H.Q., ONNAING.

ISSUED BY RUNNER AT_____

W. C. BABER,
Lieut. Asst. Adjt.

Copy # 1 7th C.I. Bde.
2&3 2 O.C. & 2 i/c
3 Adjutant
4.5.6.7 O. Cs Coys.
8. Scout O
9. Sig. O.
10. 11 LG.O & LG. Sgt.
12 M.
13 TP
14 MO.
15 RSM.
16.17.18 War diary
19 File

NARRATIVE OF OPERATIONS
42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.
NOVEMBER 9th-11th (both inclusive), 1918

I. Preliminary Operations

Nov. 9th. The Battalion in billets in THULIN. Working Parties of 300 OR. were supplied to fill mine craters and repair roads.

At 12.00 hours orders were received to move to BOUSSU. Working Parties were immediately recalled and the Battalion moved off at 13.60 hours.

During the march instructions were issued that the Battalion would continue on to JEMAPPES, where it arrived at 16.30 hours and went into billets for the night.

Nov. 10th. Reconnaissance of the Forward Area was made by the Commanding Officer and Scout Officer. At 08.30 hours orders were received that the Battalion would move forward and relieve the P.P. C.L.I. South of the CONDE-MONS CANAL. A Company of the R.C.R. under Captain Home, M.C. was attached to the Battalion and placed under orders of the Commanding Officer.

Number of Officers engaged:- 22

Number of O.R. engaged 485

II. Offensive Operations

At 09.00 hours "A" Company under Lieut. J.B.T. Montgomerie, MC., MM., and "C" Company under Captain E. B. Finley, MC., left JEMAPPES to relieve the P.P. C.L.I. "A" Company were on the right and had orders to work around to the South of MONS and effect an entrance to the city over the Bridge Heads in Q.13.b. and Q.14.a. In the event of these Bridges being destroyed they were to push further forward and work in on the Eastern outskirts of the city.

"C" Company were kept in Support along the Railway Embankment in P.11.c.17.2

At 10.30 hours "D" Company under Captain W. A. Grafftey, were ordered to relieve a Company of the P.P. C.L.I. immediately South of the CONDE-MONS CANAL, and to force an entrance into MONS in the vicinity of the Railway Station.

At 09.00 hours Battalion Headquarters moved to Billet 44 in QUESMES at approximately P.24.a.4.7. "B" Coy. under Lieut. W. H. Molson, MC., was left in reserve and with Headquarter Details remained in JEMAPPES.

"A" Company on relieving the P.P. C.L.I. immediately pushed forward a screen of Scouts to reconnoitre the Bridge Heads in 13.b. They were met with very heavy machine gun fire from the Canal Bank which swept all approaches to the Bridge Heads. An O.P. was established on the slag heap and two of the machine guns were definitely located firing from houses on the Northern bank of the Canal. These were engaged by the 24th Battery, C.F.A., but no concentrated barrage was put down as it was desired to cause as little damage as possible to Civilian property. The shrapnel barrage, however, proved ineffective and the machine guns continued active, making further progress in this direction impossible during daylight.

It was then decided to attempt an entrance by the Bridge Head in Q.14.a. One Platoon worked its way in the rear of the houses through Q.13.b. and Q.13.d., reaching the road running through Q.13.d. and Q.14.b. Scouts were sent out but heavy machine gun fire was encountered from the Canal Bank in 14.a. Owing to the flatness of the country progress was very slow. Under cover of occasional

bursts of artillery fire this platoon worked forward but were unable to reach the Bridge Head during daylight. At dusk the platoon was in position along the road with outposts in front.

Several machine guns were located firing from MONT PANISEL and the high ground in Q 15 b. and d. These were engaged by 6" Hows and 60 Pounders. The shoot was apparently very effective as the fire from these very greatly diminished.

Arrangements were made with Brutinel's Brigade to send forward four motor lorries with 6" Newton's French Mortars, to be put in position after dusk on the roads in Q 13 b. and Q 14 a., for the purpose of engaging machine guns operating from the Northern bank of the Canal. It was also arranged with the 24th Battery that two of their guns would be man-handled into position on these roads in order that the enemy machine gun posts would be shot up at point blank range.

6" Newt

Point Blank

At 12.30 hours "D" Company on the left relieved a Company of the P.P. C.L.I. in P. 12 a. The Company frontage extended from the River running East and West through P. 12 c & d. on the South and the CONDE-MONS CANAL through P. 12 a. & b. on the North. This Company advanced on a two platoon front and was held up at 13.30 hours on the road running North and South through P. 12 a. & c. by enemy machine guns and rifle fire from P. 12 d. 75.65 - P. 12 d. 50.30 and P. 12 b. 60.40. The progress from this road forward was slow and was only possible by working through gardens and climbing over the walls in the rear of the houses on both sides of the road running in a South Easterly direction towards the enemy post in P. 12 d. 75.65. By 17.00 hours posts were established on either side of the [illegible] at P. 12 d. 35.95. Lieut. M. McLaren was wounded by machine gun fire while establishing these posts.

As the majority of the machine guns were located on the right flank and the heaviest opposition was coming from this quarter it was decided to force an entrance on the extreme left along the Southern edge of the CONDE-MONS CANAL, to work through the city and cut off the machine gun operating on the Southern Canal bank. Instructions were accordingly issued and at 19.00 Lieut. D. M. Handy with No. 14 Platoon started up the Canal Bank. After careful manoeuvring under enemy fire he made good a post at P. 12 b. 60.60. This post was established at 21.00 hours.

At 22.00 hours Capt. W. A. Grafftey and Lieut. D. M. Handy with No. 16 Platoon left the post at P. 12 b. 60.60 and under cover of two Lewis Guns which engaged the enemy posts on the right, passed through the MONS Railway Yard and entered the city at a point near the Station at 23.00 hours. The enemy Machine Guns were still covering the approaches to the city at P. 12 d. 9.5. and the remaining two platoons of the Company were immediately sent for and by 01.00 hours on the morning of the 11th the whole Company had entered the city.

Lieut. J. C. Stewart, MC. with No. 14 Platoon was sent through the centre of the city and made good a position on the Eastern outskirts in Q 18 c 8.8. This cut off the enemy who had not left the machine gun post at P. 12 d. 9.5. Another platoon attacked the enemy machine gun post from the rear, and after a sharp exchange of Machine Gun fire and grenades the crew was captured. The third platoon was sent round the Northern outskirts of the town and joined up with Captain Stewart's platoon at Q 18 c 8.8.

Axx

At 02.00 hours Capt. E. B. Finley, MC. with C Company entered the town passing through the centre of the city and took up a position in Q 9 a. and K. 22 central.

At 03.00 hours Capt. White with a Company of the P.P. C.L.I. arrived in the city and were held in Support.

"B" Company of the 42nd. under Lieut. W. H. Molson, MC. were also placed in position in Support near the Hotel de Ville.

While these Operations were being carried out on the left, "A" Company worked its way under very heavy Machine Gun fire to the Bridge Heads in Q.13.b. and Q.14.a. Both these Bridges were destroyed and the Canal could not be crossed.

At about 02.30 hours on the morning of the 11th the machine guns which had been guarding the Canal Bank on the South of MONS were cut off and the right Company immediately constructed a foot bridge in Q.14.a. and entered the city about 03.00 hours.

By 06.00 hours the city was completely mopped-up and posts were established East of the outskirts in Q.4.a. & c. and Q.9.b. & d.

Battalion Headquarters moved to MONS and was established in the Hotel de Ville, at 06.30 hours.

Fifteen Prisoners were captured during the Operation.

The 24th and 39th Batteries, C.R.A., who were attached to the Battalion did excellent work.

The Pipe Band played through the City just after daybreak and created tremendous enthusiasm.

CASUALTIES:	KILLED	WOUNDED
Officers	-	1
Other Ranks	6	24
TOTAL	6	25

Lieut. Colonel,
Cmdg. 42nd. Canadian Battn., R.H.C.

(Received by DHS.
from Col. Jopp
during Osborne Trial)
WD

E 44

CONFIDENTIAL

WAR DIARY

------ooOOoo------

-:- OF -:-

42nd CANADIAN BATTALION 3rd CANADIAN DIVISION

FROM 1st Dec TO 31st Dec 1918

------ooOOoo------

VOLUME 39

With appendix 'A'.

WAR DIARY

42nd Canadian Battalion 3rd Canadian Division,

from 1st to 31st December, 1918.

Volume 39.

Diary Text — 5 Pages.

Appendix A

O.O. 220 dated the 10th December, Instructions for march of 42nd Battalion from MONS to LA HESTRE on the 11th December.

O.O. 221 dated the 11th December, Instructions for move of 42nd Battalion from La HESTRE to NIVELLES on the 12th.

O.O. 222 dated the 14th December, Instructions for march of 42nd Battalion to billets in Genval on the 15th.

O.O. 223 dated the 26th December, Instructions for move of 42nd Battalion to billets in WOITSFORT on the 27th November.

O.O. 223 A dated the 27th December, Instructions for march of 42nd Battalion on the 28th December.

O.O. 224 dated the 28th December, Instructions for march of 42nd Battalion on the 29th December.

O.O. 225 dated the 29th December, Instructions for march of 42nd Battalion to billets in NEDERBRAKEL on the 30th.

O.O. 226 dated the 31st December instructions for march of 42nd Bn. to billets in RENAIX on the 1st January.

ORIGINAL CONFIDENTIAL

WAR DIARY

DECEMBER

1918

42nd CANADIAN INF. BATTALION

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY
or
~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY~~

(*Erase heading not required.*)

Army Form C. 2118.

42nd Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
	1918.			
December	1st		The Battalion in billets at MONS. Usual parades carried on. Capt. L. G. Black, M. C. was appointed O. C. Headquarters Company. Working parties for scraping and painting steel helmets were supplied.	GDM.
	2nd		Major R. Willcock, M. C. O. C. Educational training issued instructions and syllabus in connection with the proposed educational work. Usual parades were carried on and working parties for steel helmets were supplied.	GDM.
	3rd.		Assembly of instructors and students for educational training was held at 21 Rue de Feia. About 400 students enrolled and classes were organised in reading, writing, bookkeeping and business training, elementary arithmetic, French, motor mechanics, electricity and agriculture.	GDM.
	4th.		The officers of the Battalion gave a dance to the citizens of MONS in the Salon, Hotel de Ville, on the night of the 4th. The Hotel de Ville was very kindly given to the Battalion by the Burgomaster for this purpose. The dance was largely attended.	GDM.
	5th		His Majesty, King George the Fifth, passed through the city about 11.00 hours. He was accompanied by the Prince of Wales and Prince Albert. There was no official parade but the Battalion lined both sides of the Grand Place. The King received a rousing reception.	GDM.
	6th		In the early afternoon orders were received that the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade would move to LA HESTRE on the following day. These orders were later cancelled and advice was received we would not move before the 11th.	GDM.
	7th.		All Units of the Brigade carried out a route march, leaving MONS about 09.00 hours. The Brigade marched via Grande Rue and Place de Flandres through HYON and St. SYMPHORIEN returning by the main ST SYMPHORIEN-MONS Road, arriving back about 12.30 hours.	GDM.
	8th.		Church service was held in the Church Place du Parc.	

D. D. & L., London, E.C.
(A1066) Wt W3200/P793 750,000 4/18 Sch. 52 Forms/C2118/6

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

Sheet No. 2

WAR DIARY
or
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.

(*Erase heading not required.*)

Army Form C. 2118.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
December	9th		Parades and educational classes were held in the morning. Sports in the afternoon. The undermentioned awards were published in Divisional Routine Orders issued on that day for operations near CAMBRAI.	
			Bar to the Military Cross	
			Capt. (A/Maj) C.B. Topp, DSO. MC. Lieut. (A/Capt) H.B. Trout, M.C.	
			The Military Cross	
			Lieut. J.W. Cave. Lieut. L.H. Biggar.	
			The Distinguished Conduct Medal.	
			418363 Sgt. Hodge A.J. (S.O.S. to England) 418818 Sgt. Wardlsworth, J. 902249 Cpl. Kiely, (MM) J.J.	
	10th		Orders were received that move to LA HESTRE Area would take place on the 11th.	
	11th		The Battalion left MONS at 08.30 hours and marched to BOIS D'HAINE, a distance of about 25 kilometres. A halt was made between 12.00 and 13.00 hours for dinner. On arrival the Battalion went into billets. The Brigade had spent exactly one month in MONS, having captured the city on the morning of the 11th November.	
	12th		The Battalion marched to NIVELLES, 15 kilometres, leaving BOIS D'HAINE at 08.15 hours and arriving at NIVELLES at 12.30 where they went into billets.	

D. D. & L., London, E.C.
(A1666) Wt W3306/P773 750,000 4/18 Sch. 52 Forms/C2118/6

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY
or
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

Army Form C. 2118.

xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx 42nd Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

Sheet No. 3 (Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
1918. December	13th		Training and educational classes were carried on. The undermentioned decorations were published In Divisional Routine Orders for operations in or about BOIS DES RAISMES.	
			Bar to the Military Medal.	
			207 5441 L/Cpl. S. B. Macdonald.	
			The Military Medal.	
			192601 Sgt. A. E. Smith 132599 Cpl. P. Odell. 127511 Pte. E. E. Robinson. 132581 Pte. D. Ferguson. 198987 Sgt. J. J. Gibson. 901552 Cpl. W. R. Bird. 902123 Cpl. W. H. Barron. 438918 L/Cpl. M. Brown. 749212 Pte. A. B. Dunmore	
			In the afternoon of the 13th. the officers annual Bottle Race took place. Cpl. Ewing's bottle received first prize.	
	14th.		The usual training and educational classes were carried on in the morning. In the afternoon orders were received to stand to, ready to move to GENVAL on receipt of further instructions. At a later hour move for that day was cancelled. In the afternoon permission was received from Brigade to hold a Battalion Bottle Race. An excellent course was located on the LASNE River and the race proved most exciting. No. 1 platoon won first place.	
	15th.		The Battalion marched from NIVELLES to GENVAL, about 22 kilometres. On the march up we	

D. D. & L., London, E.C.
(A1008) Wt W3300/P773 750,000 4/18 Sch. 52 Forms/C2118/16

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY
or
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.
(Erase heading not required.)

Army Form C. 2118.

Sheet No. 4

42nd Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
1918. December	15th		passed through the historic battle field of Waterloo.	
	16/17th.		The usual training and educational classes were carried out. Lieut. H. A. Sewell, Lieut. C. G. Heward and Lieut. J. B. T. Montgomerie received permission to wear the badges of Captain pending confirmation.	
	18/24th.		The Battalion in billets in GENVAL. Parades were carried out. Classes in elementary Algebra and German and officers classes in German and French were organised. During this period the Battalion received allotments for two days leave to BRUSSELS for officers and O. R. These classes were very popular and quite a large percentage of the members of the Battalion were able to avail themselves of this privilege.	
	25th		Christmas dinners were held for all Companies with the exception of 'C' Company. Two large halls were very kindly loaned to the Battalion by the owners and turkey was purchased for the whole Battalion and dinners were exceptionally good. 'A' Company and Headquarters had their dinner at 12.30 hours and 'B' and 'D' Companies at 15.30 hours. The Burgomaster attended the evening dinners and addressed the troops.	
	26th.		The usual parades and educational classes were carried on. 'C' Company's Christmas dinner was held at 12.30 hours.	
	27th.		The Battalion commenced its march to the TOURNAI - LILLE Area for demobilization and moved from GENVAL to BOITSFORT. The route followed was a very beautiful one being almost entirely through the Bret de SOIGNES. Sir Henry Rawlinson Bart, G. C. V. O., K. C. B. K. C. M. G. Commanding 4th Army took a march past en route.	
	28th.		The Battalion marched from BOITSFORT to VLESENBEEK, a distance of about 16 kilometres. The march was made in a steady downpour of rain.	

D. D. & L., London, E.C.
(A10056) Wt W3300/P793 750,000 2/18 Sch. 52 Forms/C2118/16

Army Form C. 2118.

WAR DIARY
or
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

Sheet No. 5

(*Erase heading not required.*)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
1918. December	29th		March from VLESENBEK to DENDERWINDEKE - about 17 kilometres - and arrived in billets about 12.30 hours. The weather continued wet.	
	30th.		March from DENDERWINDEKE to NEDERBRAKEL a distance of 24 kilometres and arrived in billets about 15.30 hours. Dinner was served en-route. The march was commenced in a drizzling rain but the weather cleared by noon.	
	31st.		In NEDERBRAKEL - the Division having been given a one day's halt.	

Lieut. Col.
Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

D. D. & L., London, E.C.
(A1006) Wt W3910/P773 750,000 1/18 Sch. 52 Forms/C2118/16

'A'

MOVEMENT ORDER No.220

42nd. Canadian Battalion. M.-H. C.

Ref.Maps/ Valenciennes 1/100,000 COPY NO 15

Namur do TUESDAY, DEC.10TH, 1918

1

INFORMATION The 7th Canadian Inf. Brigade and attached Units will move to LA HESTRE on the 11th instant.

2.

INTENTION The 42nd.Battalion, M.H.C. will march from MONS to Billets in LA HESTRE on the 11th instant.

3.

PARADE The Battalion will fall in - ready to move off - with head of column facing East, on Rue Gades opposite "A" Company's Billet, at 07.45 Hours.

4

ORDER OF MARCH Headquarters - A - B - C - D Companies.

5

STARTING POINT AND TIME The Battalion will pass the Starting Point - Road Junction South of "A" in BAUDEMAY, ¾ Mile East of MONS, at 08.30 Hours.

6.

ROUTE ST.SYLVESTRE - HAINE-ST.PAUL - LA HESTRE.

7

DRESS Heavy Marching Order - Greatcoats in packs Steel Helmets carried on the pack - Mess Tins in Packs.

8

OFFICERS' BEDROLLS MESS BOXES BLANKETS ETC. Officers' Bedrolls, Mess Boxes etc. will be piled at Q.M.Stores at 06.45 Hours.

BLANKETS to be rolled by Companies in bundles of ten and properly marked, and piled outside H.Q. Company Billet Rue Fetis by 06.30hrs.

KITCHENS Kitchens will be ready to move off at 07.00 Hours.

10

TRANSPORT Transport will accompany the Battalion.

11

BILLETS Company Commanders will be responsible that billets are left in a thoroughly clean and sanitary condition.

12

MARCHING OUT STATES will be turned in to Orderly Room by 07.30 Hours.

13

HALTS Halts will be observed from ten minutes to each Clock Hour to each Clock Hour.

A Halt from 11.50 Hours to 13.00 Hours will be observed for Lunch.

14

TIME Watches will be synchronized by all Companies with the Battalion Orderly Room, at 22.00 Hours this date.

J. D. MACLEOD,

Captain/Adjutant

ISSUED BY RUNNER AT 6.50 pm.

COPY No.1 to HQ. 7th C.I.Bde.

2.3.4. O.C. 2 i/c Adjt.

5.6.7.8.9. O.Cs. A.B.C.D.HQ Coys

10.11. 12 QM. TO. M.

13 R.S.M.

14.15.16 War Diary

17 File.

Operation Order No. 221.
42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

Ref./ Namur 1/100,000
Maps/ Brussels- do --

COPY NO. 15

WEDNESDAY, DECEMBER 11TH, 1918

1.
INFORMATION — The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade and attached Units will move to NIVELLES on the 12th instant.

2
INTENTION — The 42nd. Battalion. R.H.C. will march from LA HESTRE Area to billets in NIVELLES on the 12th instant.

3
PARADE — The Battalion will fall in, ready to move off, with head of column facing North East opposite H.Q. Billet - The Monastry - at 08.15 Hours to-morrow.

4
ORDER OF MARCH — HEADQUARTERS - A - B - C - D Companies

5
STARTING POINT AND TIME — MANAGE where the railway crosses the main FAYTE-LES-SENEFFE-NIVELLES Road, NIVELLES

Battalion to pass Starting Point at 08.13 Hours

6
ROUTE — FAYTE-LES-SENEFFE - NIVELLES Road

7
DRESS — Heavy Marching Order - Greatcoats in packs - Steel Helmets carried on the pack - Mess Tins in Packs.

8
OFFICERS' BEDROLLS MESS BOXES BLANKETS ETC. — Officers Bedrolls, Mess Boxes etc., will be piled at Q.M.Stores at 07.15 Hours.

BLANKETS to be rolled by Companies in bundles of ten and properly marked, and piled at Q.M. Stores at 07.00

9
KITCHENS — Kitchens will be ready to move off at 07.30 Hours.

10
TRANSPORT — Transport will accompany the Battalion.

11
BILLETS — Company Commanders will be responsible that billets are left in a thoroughly clean and sanitary condition.

12
MARCHING OUT STATES — will be turned in to Orderly Room by 07.15 Hours to-morrow

13
HALTS — Halts will be observed from ten minutes to each Clock Hour

14
TIME — Watches will be synchronized by all Companies with the Battalion Orderly Room by 07.30 Hours to-morrow.

ISSUED BY RUNNER AT 20.15

J. D. MACLEOD,
Captain/Adjt.

Copy no. 1 to 7th C.I.Bde.
2.3.4. O.C. & i/c Adjt.
5.6.7.8.9. O.Cs. A.B.C.D.HQ Coys
10. 11. 12 QM TO MO
-- -- 13 R.S.M.
14 15 16 War Diary
-- -- 17 File.

Operation Order No.222
42nd. Canadian Battalion. R. H. C.

Ref.: COPY NO. 15

Map/ Brussels 1/100,000 SATURDAY, DECEMBER 14TH, 1918

1
INFORMATION The 7th Canadian Inf. Brigade Group will move to the CHAIS-GENVAL Area on the 15th instant.

2
INTENTION The 42nd. Canadian Bn., R H.C. will march to billets in GENVAL.

3
PARADE The Battalion will fall in - ready to move off - at 09.45 Hours, with head of column facing Church and opposite Orderly Room.

4
ORDER OF MARCH Pipe Band - H.Q. - A - B - C - D Coys.

5
STARTING POINT Railway Crossing main NIVELLES BRUSSELS Rd. between points 27 and 28.

6
TIME The Battalion will pass Starting Point at 09.25 Hours.

7.
ROUTE LILLOIS-WITTERZEE - BRUT-ST.JEAN BAS BANS-BEGUER.

8
DRESS Heavy Marching Order - Greatcoats in Packs - Steel Helmets carried on Packs.

9.
OFFICERS' BEDROLLS MESS BOXES BLANKETS ETC. Officers' Bedrolls, Mess Boxes etc, will be piled at Q.M.Stores by 07.45 Hours.

BLANKETS will be rolled by Companies in bundles of ten and properly marked, and piled at Q.M.Stores by 07.45 Hours.

10
KITCHENS will be ready to move off by 08.00 Hours.

11
TRANSPORT will accompany the Battalion.

12
BILLETS Company Commanders will be responsible that billets are left in a thoroughly clean and sanitary condition.

13
MARCHING OUT STATES will be turned into Orderly Room by 08.15 Hours to-morrow 15th instant.

14
HALTS Usual Halts will be observed - Noon Hour halt one hour ten minutes from 11.50 to 13.00 Hours.

15
ISSUED BY RUNNER AT_____ J. D. MACLEOD,

Captain/Adjt.

COPY NO. 1 7th C.I.Bde.
2.3.4. O.C. 2 i/c Adjt.
5.6.7.8.9. O.Cs. A.B.C.D. HQ Coys.
10.11.12 QM TO MO
13 R.S.M.
14 15 16 War Diary
17 File

15

Operation Order No. 283
by
Lieut. Col. R.L.H.Ewing, DSO. MC.
Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

SECRET

Ref. Map Brussels 1/100,000 26th December 1918.

1. Information	P.P.C.L.I. and 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. will move to BOITSFORT on the 27th inst.
2. Intention	The 42nd Canadian Battalion, R. H. C. will march from GENVAL to billets in BOITSFORT.
3. Parades.	Battalion will fall in ready to move off at 08.15 hours. Head of column opposite Y.M.C.A. facing north.
4. Order of march	Half of pipe band - HQ. A.B. - half of pipe band C. D.
5. Starting point	MAIRIE GENVAL.
6. Time	The Battalion will pass starting point at 08.30 hours.
7. Route.	GENVAL - LA HULPE - HOEYLAERT - BOITSFORT.
8. Dress.	Heavy marching order, great coats in packs, steel helmets carried on packs. Mess tins in packs.
9. Bed rolls, Mess boxes, Blankets etc.	Officers' bed rolls, mess boxes etc. piled in front of Company Headquarters at 08.00 hours Blankets will be rolled by Companies in bundles of ten and properly marked and piled at Q.M. stores at 07.30 hours.
10. Kitchens.	Kitchens will be ready to move off by 08.15 hours.
11. Transport.	Transport will accompany Battalion.
12. Billets.	Company Commanders will be responsible that all billets are left in a thoroughly clean and sanitary condition.
13. Marching out States.	Marching out states will be turned into Orderly Room by 08.30 hours.
14. Halts.	Usual halts will be observed from ten minutes to each clock hour until each clock hour.

J.D. MacLeod,
Captain Adjutant.

Issued by runner at.....

1.	7th C.I.B.
2.3.4.	O.C. 2 i/c Adjt.
5.6.7.8.9.	O.C. A.B.C.D. HQ Coy.
10.11. 12.	Q.M. T. O. M.O.
13.	R.S.M.
14.15.16	War Diary.
17	File.

15

Operation Order No. 123A

by

Secret

Lieut. Col. R.L.H. Ewing, DSO. MC.

Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

Ref. Map Brussels 1/100,000 27th December 1918.

1. Intention. The 42nd Canadian Battalion, RHC, will march from BOITSFORT to billets in VLESENBEEK on the 28th. inst.

2. Parade. The Battalion will fall in ready to move off at 08.50 hours. Head of column opposite Battalion Headquarters, facing west.

3. Order of march Half of pipe band, HQ. A.B. half of pipe band C and D.

4. Starting point Where road crosses railway at BOITSFORT Station.

Time The Battalion will pass starting point at 09.15 hours.

Route. VIVIER d'OIE - DREOGENBOSCH to BIGARD Stn. to main Brussels - Hal Road thence west to ZUCH - thence North to 3 D.25.55 - INN - VLESENBEEK.

7. Dress. Heavy marching order, great coats in packs, steel helmets carried on packs.

8. Bed Rolls, Mess boxes Blankets etc. Officers' bed rolls, mess boxes etc. HQ, D and B will be piled at Q.M. stores at 07.30 hours, A and C Cos. bed rolls mess boxes etc. will be piled in front of Company Headquarters at 07.15 hrs. Blankets will be rolled by Companies in bundles of ten and properly marked and piled at Q. M. stores by 07.30 hours.

9. Kitchens Kitchens will be ready to move off at 08.00 hours.

10. Transport. Transport will accompany Battalion.

11. Billets. Company Commanders will be responsible that all billets are left in a thoroughly clean and sanitary condition.

12. Marching out States Marching out states will be turned into Orderly Room by 08.00 hours.

13. Halts. Usual halts will be observed from ten minutes to each clock hour until each clock hour.

J.D. MacLeod,
Captain Adjutant.

Issued by runner at.....

Distribution -

1	7th C.I.B.
2.3.4.	C.O. 2 i/c Adjt.
5.6.7.8.9.	O.C. A.B.C.D. HQ Cos.
10.11.12	Q.M. T.O. M.O.
	R.S.M.
14.15.16	War Diary.
	File.

Operation Order No. 284 Copy No. 15
by SECRET
Lieut. Col. R.L.H. Ewing, DSO. MC.
Cmdg. 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.
Reference Map Brussels 1/100,000 28th December 1918.

1. Information. The 7th Canadian Infantry Bde. Group will continue the march to "B" Area on December 29th.

2. Intention. The 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. will march from VLESENBEEK to billets in DENDERWINDEKE. on the 29th inst.

3. Parades. The Battalion will fall in ready to move off at 08.30 hours. Head of column opposite Chateau, Headquarters, facing west.

Order of march Half of pipe band, HQ. A.B. Cos, half of pipe band C and D Companies.

4. Starting point Cross roads south of P in OPBEEK.

5. Time. The Battalion will pass the starting point at 08.30 hours.

6. Route. OPBEEK - GAESBEEK - LENNICK - ST QUENTIN - STUIVENBERG - NEYGHEM - LINKEBEEK - DENDERWINDEKE.

7. Dress. Heavy marching order great coats in packs, steel helmets carried on packs.

8. Bed Rolls Mess boxes Blankets etc. Officers' bed rolls, mess boxes etc. will be piled in front of Company Headquarters at 07.15 hours. Blankets will be rolled by Companies in bundles of ten and properly marked and piled at Q.M. Stores by 07.30 hours.

9. Kitchens. Kitchens will be ready to move off at 07.45 hrs.

10. Transport. Transport will accompany Battalion.

11. Billets. Company Commanders will be responsible that all billets are left in a thoroughly clean and sanitary condition.

12. Marching out States. Marching out states will be turned into Orderly Room by 06.00 hours.

13. Halts. Usual halts will be observed from ten minutes to each clock hour until each clock hour. Noon day halt from 11.50 - 13.00 hours.

Issued by runner at..... J.L. MacLeod,
Captain Adjutant.
Distribution-

1.2.3.4. 7th C.I.B.
5.6.7.8.9. C.O. 2 i/c Adjt.
10.11.12 O.Cs. A.B.C.D.HQ Cos.
13. Q.M. T.O. M.O.
14.15.16 R.S.M.
17. War Diary
File.

SECRET Operation Order No. 205 COPY NO. 15

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

Ref. Maps. Brussels - 1/100,000
Tournai do SUNDAY, DECEMBER 29TH, 1918

1
INFORMATION The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade Group will continue the march to-morrow December 30th.

2
INTENTION The 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. will march from DENDERWINDELE to billets in NEDERBRAKEL on the 30th instant.

3
PARADES The Battalion will fall in, ready to move off, at 08.30 Hours, head of column opposite Q.M. Stores - Richoud Van Ongeval, facing North.

4.
ORDER OF MARCH Half of PipeBand - HQ - A - B Coys - Half of Pipe Band - C - D Companies.

5
STARTING POINT Junction of main NINOVE-BRUSSELS, NINOVE-ENGHIEN Roads.

6
TIME The Battalion will pass the Starting Point at 08.40 Hours.

7
ROUTE NINOVE - OPHASSELT - NEDERBRAKEL.

8
OFFICERS' BEDROLLS MESS BOXES BLANKETS ETC. Officers' Bedrolls, Mess Boxes etc. will be piled at Q.M. Stores by 07.30 Hours. BLANKETS will be rolled by Companies in bundles of ten and properly marked, and piled at Q.M.Stores by 07.30 Hours.

9
KITCHENS Kitchens will be ready to move off at 08.00 Hours.

10
TRANSPORT Transport will accompany the Battalion.

11
BILLETS Company Commanders will be responsible that all billets are left in a thoroughly clean and sanitary condition.

12
MARCHING OUT STATES will be turned in to Orderly Room by 08.00 Hours.

13
HALTS Usual Halts will be observed from ten minutes to each clock hour until each clock hour. Noon day halt from 11.30 to 13.00 Hours.

Issued by Runner at 16.15 Hours. J. D. McLEOD,

Copy No. 1 HQ 7th C.I.Bde.
2,3,4. O.C. 2 i/c Adjt.
5,6,7,8,9. O.Cs. A.B.C.D.HQ Coys.
10,11,12. QM TO MO.
13 R.S.M.
14,15,16 War Diary
17 File.

Operation Order No. 286
by
Lieut. Col. E.L.H. Baing, DSO, MC.
Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

Copy...15...
SECRET

Ref. Map Tournai 1/100.000 Tuesday December 31st 1918.

1. Information. The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade Group will continue the march tomorrow, January 1st 1919 to RENAI Area.

2. Intention. The 42nd Canadian Battalion R.H.C. will march on 1st January 1919 from NEDERBREMEL to billets in RENAIX.

3. Parades. The Battalion will fall in, ready to move off, at 08.40 hours, head of column opposite Battalion Orderly Room facing south west.

4. Order of march. Half of pipe band - HQ - A - B Coys. - Half of pipe band - C - D Companies.

5. Starting point. Cross roads half a kilometre South of P in OPBRAKEL.

6. Time. The Battalion will pass the starting point at 09.20 hours.

7. Route. Main roads to destination.

8. Officers' bed rolls, mess boxes etc. Officers' bed rolls, mess boxes etc. will be piled at Company Headquarters by 07.00 hours, except H.Q Coy. who will pile at Q.M. stores at 07.45 hours Blankets will be rolled by Companies in bundles of ten and properly marked, and piled at Q.M. stores by 07.30 hours.

9. Kitchens. Kitchens will be ready to move off at 08.00 hours.

10. Transport. Transport will accompany the Battalion.

11. Billets. Company Commanders will be responsible that all billets are left in a thoroughly clean and sanitary condition.

12. Marching out States Marching out states will be turned into Orderly Room by 08.00 hours.

13. Halts. Usual halts will be observed from ten minutes to each clock hour until each clock hour.
Noon day halt from 11.50 - 13.00 hours.

J.D. MacLeod.
Captain Adjutant.

Issued by runner at 16.15 hours

Distribution -

No.1 copy	7th C.I.B.
2.3.4.	C.O. 2 i/c Adjt.
5.6.7.8.9.	C.Cs. A.B.C.D. HQ Cos.
10.11.12.	M.O. Q.M. T.O.
13.	R.S.M.
14.15.16	War Diary.
17.	File.

CONFIDENTIAL

WAR DIARY

------oo0Ooo------

-:- OF -:-

42nd CANADIAN BATTALION 3rd CANADIAN DIVISION

FROM 1st Jan: TO 31st Jan: 1919

------oo0Ooo------

VOLUME 40

with appendix A

WAR DIARY

42nd Canadian Battalion 3rd Canadian Division,

from 1st to 31st January, 1919.

Volume 40.

Diary Text	2 Pages.
Appendix A.	O.O. 227 dated the 1st January, Instructions re march of 42nd Bn. on January 2nd.
	O.O. 228 dated the 2nd January, Instructions re march of 42nd Bn. on the 3rd January.

A

40

ORIGINAL

CONFIDENTIAL

WAR DIARY

JANUARY

1919

42nd CANADIAN INF. BATTALION

Original

Army Form C. 2118.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY~~

(Erase heading not required.)

Place 1919	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
JANUARY	1st.		The Battalion marched from DENDERBRAKEN to RENAIX where it went into billets for the night.	
			Work on demobilization commenced.	
	2nd.		Left RENAIX at 08.30 Hours, arriving at HERRINES at 14.00 Hours where the Battalion went into Billets.	
	3rd.		The Battalion marched from HERRINES to NECHIN, arriving there at 12. noon, and went into billets.	
	3rd-31st.		The Battalion remained in NECHIN during this period. Educational Classes were carried on daily in the Convent which was very kindly placed at our disposal. Parades were held daily between the hours of 09.00 and 12.00. Work consisted principally of Inspection - P.T. and Games - Smartening-up Drill and Route Marches. In the afternoons sports were carried on and inter-Company and inter-Battalion Hockey and Football Games played. 25 Passes per day were granted to men of the Unit to visit LILLE.	
	4th.		Efficiency and Pay Parades were held. The following congratulatory message was received from Sir John Maxwell, Colonel of The Black Watch, Royal Highlanders:	
			December 28th, 1918 Dringthorpe, York. "General Sir John Maxwell thanks the Officer Commanding and Officers of the Royal Highlanders of Canada for their good wishes and takes this opportunity as Colonel of the Black Watch to congratulate the 42nd. Canadian Battalion on the magnificent results achieved by them during this War. He regrets very much that he has not had an opportunity of making the acquantance of the Regiment and hopes he may yet find an occasion to do so. He wishes one and all every good wish and prosperity."	
	9th-10th.		Medical Board and Dental Inspection was carried out in connection with Demobilization - about 600 being examined.	

D. D. & L., London, E.C.
(A10066) Wt W3300/P773 750,000 8/18 Sch. 52 Forms/C2118/16

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY

Sheet 2 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

Original

Army Form C. 2118.

INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(*Erase heading not required.*)

Place 1919	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
JANUARY	3rd-31st.		11th - Colour Party, composed as under, proceeded to England to escort the King's and Regimental Colours to the Battalion: Captain J. D. Macleod, MC. Captain C. G. Heward, 132241 CSM Smith, G. (MM) — 441179 Sgt. Trowse, C. (DCM) 192421 Cpl. Gibson, A. (MM) — 902249 Cpl. Kiely, J. J. (DCM, MM) 132421 Pte. Stapley, F. C. (MM) — 754441 Cpl. Hanes, M. E. 15th - All English leave - with the exception of leave for men with dependents in England - was cancelled in view of the move to England by the Division. 17th - The Brigade was inspected by Lieutenant-General Sir Arthur Currie, K. C. B., K. C. M. G. 29th - The Colours were consecrated and presented to the Battalion, the presentation being made by Major-General F. O. W. Loomis, C. B., C. M. G., D. S. O., Brigadier-General J. A. Clark, D. S. O. was also present. Award of the following decorations was published during the month: THE MILITARY CROSS Captain W. A. Grafftey, THE DISTINGUISHED CONDUCT MEDAL 418784 C.S.M. Davies, J.L. (M.M.) — 3rd. Can. Div. R.O. 5. 1. 19 BELGIAN CROIX DE GUERRE 418877 Sergt. Haslett, J. — 3rd. Can. Div. R.O. 3847 17. 1. 19 Following are the total casualties from November 16th, 1915 to November 11, 1918:	

	KILLED IN ACTION	DIED OF WOUNDS	WOUNDED	TOTALS
OFFICERS	20	6	87	113
OTHER RANKS	546	174	2,077	2,797
	566	180	2,164	2,910

E. R. Rear Major
Comdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.

A7092 Wt. W128.9/M1893. 750,000. 1/17. D. D. & L. Ltd. Forms/C2118/14.

A

Operation Order No. 227
by
Lieut. Col. R.L.H. Ewing, DSO, MC, Secret
Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.
Wednesday 1st January 1919.

Copy No. 14

Ref. Map TOURNAI 1/100,000

1. Information. The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade Group will continue the march tomorrow January 2nd 1919 to 'E' Area.

2. Intention. The 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. will march on 2nd January 1919 from RENAIX to billets in HERINNES.

3. Parades. The Battalion will fall in ready to move off, at 08.15 hours, head of column opposite Battalion Orderly Room, facing south west.

4. Order of March. Half of pipe band - HQ - A - B Coys. - Half of pipe band - C - D Companies.

5. Starting point. Cross roads on TOURNAIX - RENAIX Road south of M in MEULBEEK River.

6. Time. The Battalion will pass the starting point at 09.00 hours.

7. Route. GLIGET - MOLEMBAIX - Chemin VERT - HERINNES.

8. Officers' Bed rolls, mess boxes etc. Officers bed rolls, mess boxes etc. will be piled at Q.M. Stores by 07.15 hours. Blankets will be rolled by Companies in bundles of ten and properly marked, and piled at Q.M. stores by 07.15 hours.

9. Kitchens. Kitchens will be ready to move off at 07.45 hours.

10. Transport. Transport will accompany the Battalion.

11. Billets. Company Commanders will be responsible that all billets are left in a thoroughly clean and sanitary condition.

12. Marching out States. Marching out states will be turned into the Orderly Room by 07.45 hours.

13. Halts. Usual halts will be observed from ten minutes to each clock hour until each clock hour.
Noon day halt from 11.50 - 13.00 hours.

J.D. MacLeod,
Captain/Adjutant.

Distribution :-
No. 1 Copy 7th J.I.B.
2.3.4. O.C. 2 i/c. Adjt.
5.6.7.8.9. O.Cs - A.B.C.D.HQ Cos.
10.11.12 M.O. T.O. Q.M.
13. R.S.M.
14.15.16 War Diary.
17. File.

Operation Order No. 338.

by

Lieut. Col. R.L.H.Ewing,DSO.MC. Copy No.....

Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. SECRET

Reference Map TOURNAI 1/100,000 Thursday 2nd January 1919.

1. Information. The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade will march tomorrow January 3rd 1919 to 'F' Area.

2. Intention. The 42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C. will march from HERINNES to billets in MECHIN.

3. Parades. The Battalion will fall in ready to move off at 09.00 hours, head of column facing south, opposite 'B' Company's Headquarters, about one kilo. south of the Battalion Orderly Room.

4. Order of march. Half of pipe band - HQ - A - B Cos. Half of pipe band - C - D Companies.

5. Starting point. Pecq Station.

6. Time. The Battalion will pass the starting point 10.00 hours.

7. Route. PECQ Station, PECQ, MECHIN.

8. Officers bed rolls, mess boxes etc. Officers' bed rolls, mess boxes for HQ. A,C and D Cos. will be piled at Q.M. Stores by 08.45 hours, B Company's will be piled in front of Company Headquarters by 08.30 hours. Blankets will be rolled by Companies in bundles of ten & properly marked and piled at Q.M. stores by 0830 hours.

9. Kitchens Kitchens will be ready to move off 09.00 hours.

10. Transport. Transport will accompany the Battalion.

11. Billets. Company Commanders will be responsible that all billets are left in a thoroughly clean and sanitary condition.

12. Marching out states. Marching out states will be turned into the Battalion Orderly Room by 09.00 hours.

13. Halts. Usual halts will be observed from ten minutes to each clock hour until each clock hour.

J.D.MacLeod,
Capt. Adjt.

Issued by Runner at 23.30 hours.

Distribution :-

No.1 Copy	7th C.I.B.
2.3.4.	C.O. 2 i/c. Adjt.
5.6.7.8.9.	O.Cs. A.B.C.D. HQ Cos.
10.11.12	M.O. T.O. Q.M.
13	R.S.M.
14.15.16	War Diary.
17	File.

Confidential

War Diary

of

42nd Canadian Battalion.

From 1st February To 28th February 1919.

Volume 41.

WAR DIARY

42nd Canadian Battalion 3rd Canadian Division,

from 1st to 28th February, 1919.

Volume 41.

Diary Text 4 Pages.

ORIGINAL CONFIDENTIAL

WAR DIARY

FOR

FEBRUARY 1919

42nd CANADIAN BATTALION

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY
42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY~~

(*Erase heading not required.*)

Army Form C. 2118.

Place 1919	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
FEBRUARY	1st		The 3rd. Canadian Divison started entraining from BASSIEUX for England via LE HAVRE.	
	2ND		13 Officers and 300 Other Ranks proceeded on 8 days Demobilization Leave to England, under instructions to report to BRAMSHOTT at its expiration and meet the rest of the Battalion there.	
	3rd		4 Officers and 64 Other Ranks proceeded to England on 8 days Demobilization Leave. The remainder of the Battalion entrained at BASSIEUX for LE HAVRE. The journey took over forty eight hours, the Unit arriving at LE HAVRE on the 5th, and the train was composed entirely of box cars.	
	7th		The Battalion proceeded from LE HAVRE to WEYMOUTH arriving there in the early morning of the 8th, and entraining about 11.00 Hours for BRAMSHOTT which was reached at 17.00 Hours.	
			The various Divisional Wings in France had preceded the Corps to England with their staffs and were in charge of the Bramshott Camp. "A" Wing had charge of North Camp where the Battalion was located.	
	9-28th		9th Medical boarding of the Battalion commenced.	
			The general plan was - All men who had arrived in Camp with the Unit were medically boarded and all their documents for demobilization completed, after which they were despatched on 8 days demobilization leave. As soon as those who had proceeded from France on leave returned to Camp they ~~[illegible]~~ went through boarding and documentation.	
			The boarding of the Unit took considerably more time than was anticipated owing to the delay and difficulty in obtaining the men's papers. The Casualty Forms of a large number were still in France, the Attestation Papers and Medical History Sheets at the Records Office in London, and great difficulty was experienced in tracing and obtaining these.	
			The boarding of the Unit was not finally completed until the 28th of the month the day before the Unit left Camp.	
			Training was carried on for two or three hours each morning as far as weather conditions would allow. These during the entire stay of the Unit in Bramshott were most unfavourable.	

A2096. Wt. W.12B.9/M1495. 750,000. 4/17. D. D. & L. Ltd. Forms/C2118/14.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C. Sheet 2

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY~~.

(*Erase heading not required.*)

Army Form C. 2118.

Place 1919	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
FEBRUARY	9th - 28th		22nd. The following farewell message to the Brigade was received from Major-General Sir Archibald Cameron Macdonnell, K.C.B. :-	

1st. Canadian Division
February 6th, 1919

My Dear Clark,

Forgive me for bothering you, but I cannot let the dear old Brigade be demobilized without a word from myself. Will you please convey to each and every Unit of the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade my heartfelt wishes for their welfare, success and happiness on being demobilized. It is a proud boast for me to be able to say that at one time I commanded such a Brigade. I have no fear but that they will succeed in civil life if they exhibit the same qualities of courage, initiative, thoroughness, and tenacity of purpose that they showed to such a large degree in the battle field.

The best of good luck attend you and the Old Brigade in all your undertakings.

I am,
Yours sincerely,
(Signed) Archibald Cameron Macdonell.

23rd The Adjutant - Captain J. D. Macleod, MC - who was on leave in London was admitted to hospital where it was discovered that he was suffering from Diptheria.

25th Brig. General Hugh M. Dyer, C.M.G, D.S.O. visited BRAMSHOTT and a Brigade Parade was held at which he said farewell to the Brigade.

26th A special investiture for Officers of the 3rd. Canadian Division was held by the King at Buckingham Palace, at which the undementioned Officers were invested with decorations set forth:-

			INVESTED WITH		INVESTED WITH
Lieut. Col.	R. L. H.	Ewing, DSO, MC	DSO & MC	Capt. W. A. Grafftey MC	MC
Major	R.	Willcock, MC	MC & Bar to MC	Capt. J. K. Beveridge, MC	MC
"	S. J.	Mathewson, MC	Bar to MC	Capt. Wm. Hale, MC	Bar to MC
				Lieut. J. W. Cave, MC	MC

A2092 Wt. 41268/M1193 750,000. 1/19. D. D. & L. Ltd. Forms/C2118/14.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY
42nd. Canadian Battn. R. H. C. Sheet 3
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.
(*Erase heading not required.*)

Army Form C. 2118.

Place 1919	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
FEBRUARY	26th Cont		The following Officers left the Battalion and proceeded on two weeks leave at the expiration of which they were to report to the Quebec Regimental Depot, South RIPON, and proceed from there to Canada with their wives: Captain J. B. T. Montgomerie, MC Lieut. A. B. Proven, MM " P. Ackerley, DCM " D. B. Macaskill, MC " G. S. Ryder,	
	27th		Lieuts. R. C. Bobell, J.M. Kavanagh, MCR. N. Munroe joined the Unit from the 20th Canadian Reserve Bn.,	
	28th		Boarding and Documentation of the Unit was completed and orders were issued that the Battalion would entrain at LIPHOOK Station on the morning of the 1st. for LIVERPOOL to sail on that date on the R.M.S. ADRIATIC. The men for the Dispersal Areas of MONCTON, ST. JOHN and QUEBEC, numbering 45 were to remain under command of Lieuts. A. C. Baldwin and A. W. MacMinn and proceed by the next boat. The strength of the Unit on this date was as follows:-	

	OFFICERS	OTHER RANKS
REMAINING IN BRAMSHOTT SAILING ON NEXT BOAT	2	45
A.W.L.		7
IN HOSPITAL		26
DISPATCHED TO RIPON FOR VARIOUS REASONS		37
	2	115
PROCEEDED WITH UNIT TO LIVERPOOL	31	606
	33	721

The following statistics concerning the Unit are of interest:-

A2092 Wt. 11128.9/M1293. 750,000. 1/17. D. D. & L. Ltd. Forms/C2118/14.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY

42nd. Canadian Bn., R. H. C. Sheet 4

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.~~

(*Erase heading not required.*)

Army Form C. 2118.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
1919 FEBRUARY	28TH Cont			

	KILLED IN ACTION	DIED OF WOUNDS	WOUNDED	TOTAL
OFFICERS	20	6	87	113
OTHER RANKS	546	174	2077	2797
	566	180	2164	2910

BATTALION STRENGTH

	ON ARRIVAL IN FRANCE	INCREASE BY REINFORCEMENTS OR RETD. CASUALTIES	TOTAL	STRENGTH 31. 12. 18	TOTAL STRENGTH DECREASE
OFFICERS	33	173	206	39	167
OTHER RANKS	974	3675	4649	1037	3612

Roger Lee Burns.

Lieut. Colonel,

Cmdg. 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

A9091 Wt. 11.126.9/M1293 750,000. 1/19. D.D & L. Ltd. Forms/C2118/14.